

**TEI Customization for the Data Collection *Lectures*  
that *Link: European Digital Humanities Lecture Series*  
generated by Roma 4.10**

*written by Ulrike Henny-Krahmer, Fernanda Alvares Freire, and Erik Renz*  
2025

## Contents

<b>1. Introduction</b>	<b><u>1</u></b>
<b>2. Data Sources and Strategy for Data Selection and Capture</b>	<b><u>1</u></b>
<b>3. TEI Encoding of Lecture Series</b>	<b><u>1</u></b>
3.1. Hierarchical Organization: Series, Terms, and Lectures	<u>1</u>
<b>Appendix A. TEI Specifications</b>	<b><u>2</u></b>
Appendix A.1. Elements	<u>2</u>
Appendix A.1.1. <TEI>	<u>2</u>
Appendix A.1.2. <affiliation>	<u>4</u>
Appendix A.1.3. <availability>	<u>6</u>
Appendix A.1.4. <bibl>	<u>8</u>
Appendix A.1.5. <body>	<u>10</u>
Appendix A.1.6. <catDesc>	<u>12</u>
Appendix A.1.7. <category>	<u>13</u>
Appendix A.1.8. <classDecl>	<u>15</u>
Appendix A.1.9. <country>	<u>16</u>
Appendix A.1.10. <date>	<u>17</u>
Appendix A.1.11. <desc>	<u>20</u>
Appendix A.1.12. <editor>	<u>22</u>
Appendix A.1.13. <encodingDesc>	<u>23</u>
Appendix A.1.14. <event>	<u>24</u>
Appendix A.1.15. <eventName>	<u>27</u>
Appendix A.1.16. <fileDesc>	<u>30</u>
Appendix A.1.17. <forename>	<u>32</u>
Appendix A.1.18. <idno>	<u>33</u>
Appendix A.1.19. <item>	<u>36</u>
Appendix A.1.20. <licence>	<u>37</u>
Appendix A.1.21. <list>	<u>39</u>
Appendix A.1.22. <listEvent>	<u>42</u>
Appendix A.1.23. <listOrg>	<u>44</u>
Appendix A.1.24. <listPerson>	<u>46</u>
Appendix A.1.25. <listPlace>	<u>48</u>
Appendix A.1.26. <name>	<u>49</u>
Appendix A.1.27. <nameLink>	<u>51</u>
Appendix A.1.28. <note>	<u>53</u>
Appendix A.1.29. <org>	<u>55</u>
Appendix A.1.30. <p>	<u>57</u>
Appendix A.1.31. <particDesc>	<u>58</u>
Appendix A.1.32. <person>	<u>60</u>
Appendix A.1.33. <place>	<u>62</u>
Appendix A.1.34. <placeName>	<u>63</u>
Appendix A.1.35. <profileDesc>	<u>66</u>
Appendix A.1.36. <ptr>	<u>67</u>
Appendix A.1.37. <pubPlace>	<u>68</u>
Appendix A.1.38. <publicationStmnt>	<u>69</u>

Appendix A.1.39.	<publisher>	<u>71</u>
Appendix A.1.40.	<resp>	<u>72</u>
Appendix A.1.41.	<respStmt>	<u>73</u>
Appendix A.1.42.	<roleName>	<u>75</u>
Appendix A.1.43.	<settingDesc>	<u>76</u>
Appendix A.1.44.	<sourceDesc>	<u>78</u>
Appendix A.1.45.	<surname>	<u>79</u>
Appendix A.1.46.	<taxonomy>	<u>80</u>
Appendix A.1.47.	<teiHeader>	<u>82</u>
Appendix A.1.48.	<term>	<u>84</u>
Appendix A.1.49.	<text>	<u>86</u>
Appendix A.1.50.	<title>	<u>88</u>
Appendix A.1.51.	<titleStmt>	<u>91</u>
Appendix A.2.	Model classes	<u>92</u>
Appendix A.2.1.	model.addressLike	<u>92</u>
Appendix A.2.2.	model.attributable	<u>92</u>
Appendix A.2.3.	model.availabilityPart	<u>92</u>
Appendix A.2.4.	model.biblLike	<u>92</u>
Appendix A.2.5.	model.biblPart	<u>92</u>
Appendix A.2.6.	model.common	<u>92</u>
Appendix A.2.7.	model.dateLike	<u>93</u>
Appendix A.2.8.	model.descLike	<u>93</u>
Appendix A.2.9.	model.divBottom	<u>93</u>
Appendix A.2.10.	model.divPart	<u>93</u>
Appendix A.2.11.	model.divTop	<u>93</u>
Appendix A.2.12.	model.divTopPart	<u>93</u>
Appendix A.2.13.	model.emphLike	<u>93</u>
Appendix A.2.14.	model.encodingDescPart	<u>93</u>
Appendix A.2.15.	model.eventLike	<u>94</u>
Appendix A.2.16.	model.global	<u>94</u>
Appendix A.2.17.	model.highlighted	<u>94</u>
Appendix A.2.18.	model.imprintPart	<u>94</u>
Appendix A.2.19.	model.inter	<u>94</u>
Appendix A.2.20.	model.labelLike	<u>94</u>
Appendix A.2.21.	model.limitedPhrase	<u>94</u>
Appendix A.2.22.	model.listLike	<u>95</u>
Appendix A.2.23.	model.nameLike	<u>95</u>
Appendix A.2.24.	model.nameLike.agent	<u>95</u>
Appendix A.2.25.	model.noteLike	<u>95</u>
Appendix A.2.26.	model.orgPart	<u>95</u>
Appendix A.2.27.	model.pLike	<u>95</u>
Appendix A.2.28.	model.pPart.data	<u>96</u>
Appendix A.2.29.	model.pPart.edit	<u>96</u>
Appendix A.2.30.	model.paraPart	<u>96</u>
Appendix A.2.31.	model.persNamePart	<u>96</u>
Appendix A.2.32.	model.persStateLike	<u>96</u>
Appendix A.2.33.	model.personLike	<u>96</u>
Appendix A.2.34.	model.personPart	<u>97</u>
Appendix A.2.35.	model.phrase	<u>97</u>
Appendix A.2.36.	model.placeLike	<u>97</u>
Appendix A.2.37.	model.placeNamePart	<u>97</u>
Appendix A.2.38.	model.placeStateLike	<u>97</u>
Appendix A.2.39.	model.profileDescPart	<u>97</u>
Appendix A.2.40.	model.ptrLike	<u>97</u>

Appendix A.2.41.	model.publicationStmtPart.agency	<a href="#">98</a>
Appendix A.2.42.	model.publicationStmtPart.detail	<a href="#">98</a>
Appendix A.2.43.	model.resource	<a href="#">98</a>
Appendix A.2.44.	model.respLike	<a href="#">98</a>
Appendix A.2.45.	model.teiHeaderPart	<a href="#">98</a>
Appendix A.3.	Attribute classes	<a href="#">98</a>
Appendix A.3.1.	att.anchoring	<a href="#">98</a>
Appendix A.3.2.	att.cReferencing	<a href="#">99</a>
Appendix A.3.3.	att.calendarSystem	<a href="#">99</a>
Appendix A.3.4.	att.canonical	<a href="#">100</a>
Appendix A.3.5.	att.cmc	<a href="#">101</a>
Appendix A.3.6.	att.dateable	<a href="#">102</a>
Appendix A.3.7.	att.dateable.custom	<a href="#">103</a>
Appendix A.3.8.	att.dateable.iso	<a href="#">105</a>
Appendix A.3.9.	att.dateable.w3c	<a href="#">106</a>
Appendix A.3.10.	att.datcat	<a href="#">107</a>
Appendix A.3.11.	att.declarable	<a href="#">111</a>
Appendix A.3.12.	att.declaring	<a href="#">112</a>
Appendix A.3.13.	att.dimensions	<a href="#">112</a>
Appendix A.3.14.	att.docStatus	<a href="#">113</a>
Appendix A.3.15.	att.editLike	<a href="#">114</a>
Appendix A.3.16.	att.fragmentable	<a href="#">115</a>
Appendix A.3.17.	att.global	<a href="#">115</a>
Appendix A.3.18.	att.global.linking	<a href="#">117</a>
Appendix A.3.19.	att.global.rendition	<a href="#">119</a>
Appendix A.3.20.	att.global.responsibility	<a href="#">120</a>
Appendix A.3.21.	att.global.source	<a href="#">121</a>
Appendix A.3.22.	att.internetMedia	<a href="#">122</a>
Appendix A.3.23.	att.locatable	<a href="#">122</a>
Appendix A.3.24.	att.naming	<a href="#">123</a>
Appendix A.3.25.	att.personal	<a href="#">123</a>
Appendix A.3.26.	att.placement	<a href="#">124</a>
Appendix A.3.27.	att.pointing	<a href="#">125</a>
Appendix A.3.28.	att.ranging	<a href="#">126</a>
Appendix A.3.29.	att.sortable	<a href="#">126</a>
Appendix A.3.30.	att.typed	<a href="#">127</a>
Appendix A.3.31.	att.written	<a href="#">128</a>
Appendix A.4.	Macros	<a href="#">128</a>
Appendix A.4.1.	macro.limitedContent	<a href="#">128</a>
Appendix A.4.2.	macro.paraContent	<a href="#">128</a>
Appendix A.4.3.	macro.phraseSeq	<a href="#">128</a>
Appendix A.4.4.	macro.phraseSeq.limited	<a href="#">129</a>
Appendix A.4.5.	macro.specialPara	<a href="#">129</a>
Appendix A.5.	Datatypes	<a href="#">129</a>
Appendix A.5.1.	teidata.certainty	<a href="#">129</a>
Appendix A.5.2.	teidata.count	<a href="#">130</a>
Appendix A.5.3.	teidata.duration.iso	<a href="#">130</a>
Appendix A.5.4.	teidata.duration.w3c	<a href="#">130</a>
Appendix A.5.5.	teidata.enumerated	<a href="#">131</a>
Appendix A.5.6.	teidata.gender	<a href="#">131</a>
Appendix A.5.7.	teidata.language	<a href="#">132</a>
Appendix A.5.8.	teidata.name	<a href="#">133</a>
Appendix A.5.9.	teidata.numeric	<a href="#">133</a>
Appendix A.5.10.	teidata.outputMeasurement	<a href="#">134</a>

Appendix A.5.11.	teidata.pattern	<u>134</u>
Appendix A.5.12.	teidata.pointer	<u>134</u>
Appendix A.5.13.	teidata.probCert	<u>135</u>
Appendix A.5.14.	teidata.probability	<u>135</u>
Appendix A.5.15.	teidata.replacement	<u>135</u>
Appendix A.5.16.	teidata.sex	<u>135</u>
Appendix A.5.17.	teidata.temporal.iso	<u>136</u>
Appendix A.5.18.	teidata.temporal.w3c	<u>136</u>
Appendix A.5.19.	teidata.text	<u>137</u>
Appendix A.5.20.	teidata.truthValue	<u>137</u>
Appendix A.5.21.	teidata.version	<u>137</u>
Appendix A.5.22.	teidata.versionNumber	<u>137</u>
Appendix A.5.23.	teidata.word	<u>138</u>
Appendix A.5.24.	teidata.xTruthValue	<u>138</u>
Appendix A.5.25.	teidata.xpath	<u>138</u>

# 1. Introduction

This document describes how the TEI standard was customized for the project *Lectures that Link*. The project focuses on building a data collection of Digital Humanities lecture series hosted by European institutions between 2014 and early 2025. The primary emphasis is on the lecture series themselves, the individual lectures within these series, and the speakers involved. Detailed descriptions of who these data were collected and encoded in TEI are provided in the following sections, with examples included in the running text.

## 2. Data Sources and Strategy for Data Selection and Capture

All data used in this project was exclusively sourced from publicly accessible websites, ensuring that only freely available information was included. Data behind authentication barriers, such as those requiring login credentials, was deliberately excluded from the collection process.

In addition to textual information about the lecture series found on individual websites, additional digital materials related to the events were incorporated into the project. These sources were accessed via hyperlinks found on the websites and include presentations, blog posts, related articles, and audiovisual content, such as videos.

While every effort has been made to ensure the dataset is comprehensive within the scope of the project, it does not claim to be exhaustive or definitive. Instead, it serves as a solid foundation for both the current and future analyses.

## 3. TEI Encoding of Lecture Series

### 3.1. Hierarchical Organization: Series, Terms, and Lectures

All lecture series are recorded in the `<listEvent>` element, which is located within `<body>`, a sub-element of `<text>`. To accurately reflect the inherent structure of lecture series, the XML is organized hierarchically. The term *lecture series* implies a three-tiered structure:

1. The overarching series, representing the general lecture program.
2. Individual editions or rounds of a series, typically aligned with academic semesters or other specific time periods.
3. Individual lectures, which form the lowest hierarchical level, with most information.

To represent this hierarchy, the following approach is used:

Each lecture series is recorded within an `<event>` element, with the *type* attribute set to the value *lecture-series*. Additionally, the *where* attribute references the ID of the location where the series is hosted:

```
<event type="lecture-series"
  where="#rostock">
  <eventName xml:lang="de">Digital Humanities im Fokus: Methoden, Anwendungen und Perspektiven</eventName>
  <eventName xml:lang="en">Digital Humanities in Focus: Methods, Applications, and Perspectives</eventName>
</event>
```

# Appendix A. TEI Specifications

## Appendix A.1. Elements

### Appendix A.1.1. <TEI>

<p>&lt;TEI&gt; (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the <code>model.resource</code> class. Multiple &lt;TEI&gt; elements may be combined within a &lt;TEI&gt; (or &lt;teiCorpus&gt;) element. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	textstructure
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
version	<p>specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.</p> <p><b>Status</b>      Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b>    <u>teidata.version</u></p> <p><b>Note</b>        Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise associ-</p>

	ation provided by the <i>source</i> attribute on the associated <schemaSpec>.
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>textstructure:</b> <u>TEI</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>teiHeader</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>TEI</u> <u>text</u>
<b>Note</b>	As with all elements in the TEI scheme (except <egXML>) this element is in the TEI namespace (see 5.7.2. Namespaces). Thus, when it is used as the outermost element of a TEI document, it is necessary to specify the TEI namespace on it. This is customarily achieved by including <a href="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0</a> as the value of the XML namespace declaration (xmlns), without indicating a prefix, and then not using a prefix on TEI elements in the rest of the document. For example: <TEI version="4.8.1" xml:lang="it" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"&gt;   &lt;teiHeader&gt;     &lt;fileDesc&gt;       &lt;titleStmt&gt;         &lt;title&gt;The shortest TEI Document Imaginable&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/titleStmt&gt;       &lt;publicationStmt&gt;         &lt;p&gt;First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5           version using a namespace.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;       &lt;sourceDesc&gt;         &lt;p&gt;No source: this is an original work.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;/fileDesc&gt;   &lt;/teiHeader&gt;   &lt;text&gt;     &lt;body&gt;       &lt;p&gt;This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/body&gt;   &lt;/text&gt; &lt;/TEI&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"&gt;   &lt;teiHeader&gt;     &lt;fileDesc&gt;       &lt;titleStmt&gt;         &lt;title&gt;A TEI Document containing four page images &lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/titleStmt&gt;       &lt;publicationStmt&gt;         &lt;p&gt;Unpublished demonstration file.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;       &lt;sourceDesc&gt;         &lt;p&gt;No source: this is an original work.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;/fileDesc&gt;   &lt;/teiHeader&gt;   &lt;facsimile&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page1.png"/&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page2.png"/&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page3.png"/&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page4.png"/&gt;   &lt;/facsimile&gt; &lt;/TEI&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="teiHeader"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.resource"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element TEI {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   attribute version { text }?,   ( tei_teiHeader, ( ( tei_model.resource+, tei_TEI* )   tei_TEI+ ) ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.2. <affiliation>

<affiliation> (affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [16.2.2. The Participant Description]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.dataable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @period</li> <li>– att.dataable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-custom</li> <li>* @notBefore-custom</li> <li>* @notAfter-custom</li> <li>* @from-custom</li> <li>* @to-custom</li> <li>* @datingPoint</li> <li>* @datingMethod</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dataable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-iso</li> <li>* @notBefore-iso</li> <li>* @notAfter-iso</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @from-iso</li> <li>* @to-iso</li> <li>– att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when</li> <li>* @notBefore</li> <li>* @notAfter</li> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @evidence</li> <li>– @instant</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @role</li> <li>– @nymRef</li> <li>– att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @key</li> <li>* @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.typed</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Sample values include:</b> sponsor recommend discredit pledged</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.addressLike</u> <u>model.persStateLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>person</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <u>&lt;name&gt;</u> element as above, or the more specific <u>&lt;orgName&gt;</u> element.

<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;affiliation&gt;Junior project officer for the US &lt;name type="org"&gt;National Endowment for the Humanities&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/affiliation&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>This example indicates that the person was affiliated with the Australian Journalists Association at some point between the dates listed.</p> <pre>&lt;affiliation notAfter="1960-01-01" notBefore="1957-02-28"&gt;Paid up member of the &lt;orgName&gt;Australian Journalists Association&lt;/orgName&gt; &lt;/affiliation&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>This example indicates that the person was affiliated with Mount Holyoke College throughout the entire span of the date range listed.</p> <pre>&lt;affiliation from="1902-01-01" to="1906-01-01"&gt;Was an assistant professor at Mount Holyoke College.&lt;/affiliation&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element affiliation {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.datable.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.naming.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute type { text }?,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.3. <availability>

**<availability>** (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– att.global.source</li> <li style="padding-left: 20px;">* @source</li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @default</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>status (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>free</b></p> <p><b>are:</b> (free) the text is freely available.</p> <p><b>un-</b></p> <p><b>known</b>(unknown) the status of the text is unknown.</p> <p><b>re-</b></p> <p><b>stricted</b>(restricted) the text is not freely available.</p> <p><b>ed</b></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.biblPart</u> <u>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>publicationStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>p</u> <b>header:</b> <u>licence</u>
<b>Note</b>	A consistent format should be adopted
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;availability status="restricted"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Available for academic research purposes only.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; &lt;availability status="free"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;In the public domain&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; &lt;availability status="restricted"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Available under licence from the publishers.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;availability&gt;   &lt;licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;The MIT License       applies to this document.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy       of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal       in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights       to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell       copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is       furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in       all copies or substantial portions of the Software.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR       IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,       FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE       AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER       LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,       OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN       THE SOFTWARE.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/licence&gt; &lt;/availability&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element availability {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.declarable.attributes,   attribute status { "free"   "unknown"   "restricted" }?,   ( tei_model.availabilityPart   tei_model.pLike )+</pre>

#### Appendix A.1.4. <bibl>

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @key</li> <li>– @ref</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @default</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.docStatus <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @status</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Member of	<code>model.biblLike model.biblPart</code>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <code>bibl desc item note p title</code> <b>header:</b> <code>licence sourceDesc taxonomy</code> <b>namesdates:</b> <code>event org person place</code> <b>textstructure:</b> <code>body</code>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <code>bibl date editor name note ptr pubPlace publisher respStmt term title</code> <b>header:</b> <code>availability idno</code> <b>namesdates:</b> <code>affiliation country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname</code> character data
Note	Contains <i>phrase-level</i> elements, together with any combination of elements from the <code>model.biblPart</code> class
Example	<code>&lt;bibl&gt;Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990) &lt;/bibl&gt;</code>
Example	<pre> &lt;bibl&gt;   &lt;title level="a"&gt;The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood&lt;/title&gt;. In   &lt;author&gt;Victor E Neuberg&lt;/author&gt;, &lt;title&gt;The Penny Histories&lt;/title&gt;.   &lt;publisher&gt;OUP&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;. &lt;/bibl&gt; </pre>
Example	<pre> &lt;bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter" xml:id="carlin_2003"&gt;   &lt;author&gt;     &lt;name&gt;       &lt;surname&gt;Carlin&lt;/surname&gt;       (&lt;forename&gt;Claire&lt;/forename&gt;) &lt;/name&gt;     &lt;/author&gt;,   &lt;title level="a"&gt;The Staging of Impotence : France's last   congrès&lt;/title&gt; dans   &lt;bibl type="monogr"&gt;     &lt;title level="m"&gt;Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.     Tobin&lt;/title&gt;, éd.     &lt;editor&gt;       &lt;name&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;Claire&lt;/forename&gt;         &lt;surname&gt;Carlin&lt;/surname&gt;       &lt;/name&gt;     &lt;/editor&gt; et     &lt;editor&gt;       &lt;name&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;Kathleen&lt;/forename&gt;         &lt;surname&gt;Wine&lt;/surname&gt;       &lt;/name&gt;     &lt;/editor&gt;,     &lt;pubPlace&gt;Charlottesville, Va.&lt;/pubPlace&gt;,     &lt;publisher&gt;Rookwood Press&lt;/publisher&gt;,     &lt;date when="2003"&gt;2003&lt;/date&gt;.   &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.highlighted"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pPart.data"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.segLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.ptrLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.biblPart"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element bibl {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.canonical.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.declarable.attributes,   tei_att.docStatus.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   (     text       tei_model.gLike </pre>

	<pre>   tei_model.highlighted   tei_model.pPart.data   tei_model.pPart.edit   tei_model.segLike   tei_model.ptrLike   tei_model.biblPart   tei_model.global   ) * } </pre>
--	--

### Appendix A.1.5. <body>

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]	
<b>Module</b>	textstructure
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @decls</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>textstructure:</b> <u>text</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;body&gt; &lt;1&gt;Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;metudæs maecti end his modgidanc&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;eci dryctin or astelidæ&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;he aerist scop aelda barnum&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;heben til hrofe haleg scepen.&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;tha middungeard moncynnæs uard&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;eci dryctin æfter tiadæ&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;firum foldu frea allmectig&lt;/1&gt; &lt;trailer&gt;primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.&lt;/trailer&gt; &lt;/body&gt; </pre>

Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="0"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divTop"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.divTop"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="0"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.div1Like"/&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;sequence&gt;       &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;           &lt;elementRef key="schemaSpec"/&gt;           &lt;classRef key="model.common"/&gt;         &lt;/alternate&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.global"           minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/sequence&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"&gt;         &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"           maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;           &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt;           &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"             maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;           &lt;/alternate&gt;         &lt;/sequence&gt;         &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"           maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;           &lt;classRef key="model.div1Like"/&gt;           &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"             maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;           &lt;/alternate&gt;         &lt;/sequence&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.divBottom"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element body {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.declaring.attributes,   (     tei_model.global*,     ( ( tei_model.divTop, ( tei_model.global   tei_model.divTop ) * ) ? ), </pre>

	<pre> (   ( tei_model.divGenLike, ( tei_model.global   tei_model.divGenLike ) * ) ? ), (   (     ( tei_model.divLike, ( tei_model.global   tei_model.divGenLike ) * ) +   )   (   (     tei_model.div1Like,     ( tei_model.global   tei_model.divGenLike ) *   ) + )   (   ( ( ( schemaSpec   tei_model.common ), tei_model.global * ) + ),   (     (       (         tei_model.divLike,         ( tei_model.global   tei_model.divGenLike ) *       ) +     )       (       (         tei_model.div1Like,         ( tei_model.global   tei_model.divGenLike ) *       ) +     )   ) ? ) ), ( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global * ) * ) ) } </pre>
--	---

### Appendix A.1.6. <catDesc>

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @key</li> <li>– @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>category</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>sur-name</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;catDesc&gt;Prose reportage&lt;/catDesc&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;catDesc&gt;   &lt;textDesc n="novel"&gt;     &lt;channel mode="w"&gt;print; part issues&lt;/channel&gt;     &lt;constitution type="single"/&gt;     &lt;derivation type="original"/&gt;     &lt;domain type="art"/&gt;     &lt;factuality type="fiction"/&gt;     &lt;interaction type="none"/&gt;     &lt;preparedness type="prepared"/&gt;     &lt;purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/&gt;     &lt;purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/&gt;   &lt;/textDesc&gt; &lt;/catDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.catDescPart"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element catDesc {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.canonical.attributes,   ( text   tei_model.limitedPhrase   tei_model.catDescPart ) * } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.7. <category>

<category> (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.datcat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @datcat</li> <li>– @valueDatcat</li> <li>– @targetDatcat</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>category taxonomy</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>desc</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc category</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;category xml:id="b1"&gt;   &lt;catDesc&gt;Prose reportage&lt;/catDesc&gt; &lt;/category&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;category xml:id="b2"&gt;   &lt;catDesc&gt;Prose &lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="b11"&gt;     &lt;catDesc&gt;journalism&lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="b12"&gt;     &lt;catDesc&gt;fiction&lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;/category&gt; &lt;/category&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;category xml:id="LIT"&gt;   &lt;catDesc xml:lang="pl"&gt;literatura pi#kna&lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;catDesc xml:lang="en"&gt;fiction&lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="LPROSE"&gt;     &lt;catDesc xml:lang="pl"&gt;proza&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;catDesc xml:lang="en"&gt;prose&lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="LPOETRY"&gt;     &lt;catDesc xml:lang="pl"&gt;poezja&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;catDesc xml:lang="en"&gt;poetry&lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="LDRAMA"&gt;     &lt;catDesc xml:lang="pl"&gt;dramat&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;catDesc xml:lang="en"&gt;drama&lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;/category&gt; &lt;/category&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;alternate&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="catDesc" minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.descLike"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="equiv"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="gloss"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="category" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element category {   tei_att.global.attributes,</pre>

	<pre> te_i_att.datcat.attributes, (   ( te_i_catDesc+   ( te_i_model.descLike   equiv   gloss ) * ),   te_i_category* ) } </pre>
--	--

### Appendix A.1.8. <classDecl>

<b>&lt;classDecl&gt;</b> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.encodingDescPart
<b>Contained by</b>	header: <u>encodingDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	header: <u>taxonomy</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;classDecl&gt; &lt;taxonomy xml:id="LCSH"&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;Library of Congress Subject Headings&lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/taxonomy&gt; &lt;/classDecl&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;textClass&gt;   &lt;keywords scheme="#LCSH"&gt;     &lt;term&gt;Political science&lt;/term&gt;     &lt;term&gt;United States – Politics and government –       Revolution, 1775-1783&lt;/term&gt;   &lt;/keywords&gt; &lt;/textClass&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="taxonomy" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>

<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<code>element classDecl { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_taxonomy+ }</code>

### Appendix A.1.9. <country>

<country> (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [14.2.3. Place Names]

<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.dataable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @period</li> <li>– att.dataable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-custom</li> <li>* @notBefore-custom</li> <li>* @notAfter-custom</li> <li>* @from-custom</li> <li>* @to-custom</li> <li>* @datingPoint</li> <li>* @datingMethod</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dataable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-iso</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @notBefore-iso</li> <li>* @notAfter-iso</li> <li>* @from-iso</li> <li>* @to-iso</li> <li>– att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when</li> <li>* @notBefore</li> <li>* @notAfter</li> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @role</li> <li>– @nymRef</li> <li>– att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @key</li> <li>* @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.placeNamePart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;country key="DK"&gt;Denmark&lt;/country&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element country {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.dataable.attributes,   tei_att.naming.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

#### Appendix A.1.10. <date>

<date> (date) contains a date in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 16.2.3. The Setting Description 14.4. Dates]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global</li> </ul>

- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:base
- @xml:space
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
  - \* @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.calendarSystem
  - @calendar
- att.canonical
  - @key
  - @ref
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.dataable
  - @period
  - att.dataable.custom
    - \* @when-custom
    - \* @notBefore-custom
    - \* @notAfter-custom
    - \* @from-custom
    - \* @to-custom
    - \* @datingPoint
    - \* @datingMethod
  - att.dataable.iso
    - \* @when-iso
    - \* @notBefore-iso

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @notAfter-iso</li> <li>* @from-iso</li> <li>* @to-iso</li> <li>– att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when</li> <li>* @notBefore</li> <li>* @notAfter</li> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.dimensions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @unit</li> <li>– @quantity</li> <li>– @extent</li> <li>– @precision</li> <li>– @scope</li> <li>– att.ranging <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @atLeast</li> <li>* @atMost</li> <li>* @min</li> <li>* @max</li> <li>* @confidence</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @evidence</li> <li>– @instant</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.dateLike</u> <u>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date when="1980-02"&gt;early February 1980&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	Given on the <code>&lt;date when="1977-06-12"&gt;Twelfth Day</code> of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth. <code>&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date when="1990-09"&gt;September 1990&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element date {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.calendarSystem.attributes,   tei_att.canonical.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.dataable.attributes,   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   ( text   tei_model.gLike   tei_model.phrase   tei_model.global ) * } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.11. <desc>

<desc> (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [23.4.1. Description of Components]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>type                      characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p>



	<p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>depre-</b> (deprecation information) This element describes why or how its parent element is being deprecated, typically including recommendations for alternate encoding.</p> <pre>&lt;dataSpec module="tei"   ident="teidata.point"   validUntil="2050-02-25"&gt;   &lt;desc type="deprecationInfo"     versionDate="2018-09-14"     xml:lang="en"&gt;Several standards bodies, including NIST in the USA,     strongly recommend against ending the representation of a number     with a decimal point. So instead of &lt;q&gt;3.&lt;/q&gt; use either &lt;q&gt;3&lt;/q&gt;     or &lt;q&gt;3.0&lt;/q&gt;.&lt;/desc&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/dataSpec&gt;</pre>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.descLike</a> <a href="#">model.labelLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">category</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">taxonomy</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">place</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	When used in a specification element such as <code>&lt;elementSpec&gt;</code> , TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.
<b>Example</b>	<p>Example of a <code>&lt;desc&gt;</code> element inside a documentation element.</p> <pre>&lt;dataSpec module="tei"   ident="teidata.point"&gt;   &lt;desc versionDate="2010-10-17"     xml:lang="en"&gt;defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.&lt;/desc&gt;   &lt;content&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="token"       restriction="( - ? [0-9] + ( \. [0-9] + ) ? , - ? [0-9] + ( \. [0-9] + ) ? ) "/"&gt;     &lt;/content&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/dataSpec&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>Example of a <code>&lt;desc&gt;</code> element in a non-documentation element.</p> <pre>&lt;place xml:id="KERG2"&gt;   &lt;placeName&gt;Kerguelen Islands&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt;   &lt;terrain&gt;     &lt;desc&gt;antarctic tundra&lt;/desc&gt;   &lt;/terrain&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/place&gt;</pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<p>A <code>&lt;desc&gt;</code> with a <i>type</i> of <code>deprecationInfo</code> should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <code>&lt;desc&gt;</code> is a valid child of that element.</p> <pre>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq 'deprecationInfo']"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="../@validUntil"&gt;Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child &lt;desc type="deprecationInfo"&gt;.&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre> element desc {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute type { "deprecationInfo" }?,   tei_macro.limitedContent } </pre>
--------------------	---

### Appendix A.1.12. <editor>

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.datable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @period</li> <li>– att.datable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-custom</li> <li>* @notBefore-custom</li> <li>* @notAfter-custom</li> <li>* @from-custom</li> <li>* @to-custom</li> <li>* @datingPoint</li> <li>* @datingMethod</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– att.dateable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-iso</li> <li>* @notBefore-iso</li> <li>* @notAfter-iso</li> <li>* @from-iso</li> <li>* @to-iso</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dateable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when</li> <li>* @notBefore</li> <li>* @notAfter</li> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @role</li> <li>– @nymRef</li> <li>– att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @key</li> <li>* @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.respLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>titleStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>sur-</u> <u>name</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;editor role="Technical_Editor"&gt;Ron Van den Branden&lt;/editor&gt; &lt;editor role="Editor-in-Chief"&gt;John Walsh&lt;/editor&gt; &lt;editor role="Managing_Editor"&gt;Anne Baillot&lt;/editor&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element editor {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.dateable.attributes,   tei_att.naming.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.13. <encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.teiHeaderPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>teiHeader</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>p</u> <b>header:</b> <u>classDecl</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;encodingDesc&gt; &lt;p&gt;Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No formatting or layout information preserved.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/encodingDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element encodingDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, ( tei_model.encodingDescPart   tei_model.pLike )+ }</pre>

#### Appendix A.1.14. <event>

<event> (event) contains data relating to anything of significance that happens in time. [14.3.1. Basic Principles]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- @xml:space
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
  - \* @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.dataable
  - @period
  - att.dataable.custom
    - \* @when-custom
    - \* @notBefore-custom
    - \* @notAfter-custom
    - \* @from-custom
    - \* @to-custom
    - \* @datingPoint
    - \* @datingMethod
  - att.dataable.iso
    - \* @when-iso
    - \* @notBefore-iso
    - \* @notAfter-iso
    - \* @from-iso
    - \* @to-iso
  - att.dataable.w3c
    - \* @when
    - \* @notBefore
    - \* @notAfter
    - \* @from
    - \* @to
- att.editLike
  - @evidence

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @instant</li> <li>• att.locatable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @where</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @role</li> <li>– @nymRef</li> <li>– att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @key</li> <li>* @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.eventLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>namesdates:</b> <u>event</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>desc</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listEvent&gt;   &lt;event when="1618-05-23"     xml:id="SecondDefPrague" where="#Prague"&gt;     &lt;eventName&gt;1618 Defenestration of Prague&lt;/eventName&gt;     &lt;idno&gt;https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q13365740&lt;/idno&gt;     &lt;listPerson type="defenestrated"&gt;       &lt;person&gt;         &lt;persName&gt;Jaroslav Bořita z Martinic&lt;/persName&gt;         &lt;idno type="GND"&gt;https://d-nb.info/gnd/116810998&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;/person&gt;       &lt;person&gt;         &lt;persName&gt;Vilém Slavata z Chlumu a Košumberka&lt;/persName&gt;         &lt;idno type="GND"&gt;https://d-nb.info/gnd/1018376615&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;/person&gt;       &lt;person&gt;         &lt;persName&gt;Filip Fabricius&lt;/persName&gt;         &lt;idno type="GND"&gt;https://d-nb.info/gnd/133946118&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;/person&gt;     &lt;/listPerson&gt;     &lt;place xml:id="Prague"&gt;       &lt;placeName&gt;Prague&lt;/placeName&gt;     &lt;/place&gt;   &lt;/event&gt;   &lt;event from="1618" to="1648"     xml:id="ThirtyYearsWar"&gt;     &lt;eventName&gt;Thirty Years' War&lt;/eventName&gt;     &lt;idno&gt;https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q2487&lt;/idno&gt;     &lt;event when="1643-03-19"       xml:id="BattleofRocroi" where="#Rocroi"&gt;       &lt;eventName&gt;Battle of Rocroi&lt;/eventName&gt;       &lt;idno type="Wikidata"&gt;https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q728480&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;idno type="GND"&gt;https://d-nb.info/gnd/4202901-6&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;place xml:id="Rocroi"&gt;         &lt;placeName&gt;Rocroi&lt;/placeName&gt;         &lt;location&gt;           &lt;geo decls="#WGS"&gt;49.926111 4.522222&lt;/geo&gt;         &lt;/location&gt;       &lt;/place&gt;     &lt;/event&gt;   &lt;/event&gt; &lt;/listEvent&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;person&gt;   &lt;event type="mat" when="1972-10-12"&gt;     &lt;label&gt;matriculation&lt;/label&gt;   &lt;/event&gt;   &lt;event type="grad" when="1975-06-23"&gt;     &lt;label&gt;graduation&lt;/label&gt;   &lt;/event&gt; &lt;/person&gt; </pre>

Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.labelLike"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="eventName"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.noteLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="linkGrp"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="link"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="idno"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="ptr"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.eventLike"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.personLike"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="listPerson"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.placeLike"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="listPlace"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.objectLike"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="1"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element event {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.dataable.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.locatable.attributes,   tei_att.naming.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   (     tei_idno*,     tei_model.headLike*,     ( tei_model.pLike+   tei_model.labelLike+   tei_eventName+ ),     (       tei_model.noteLike         tei_model.biblLike         linkGrp         link         tei_idno         tei_ptr     )*,     tei_model.eventLike*,     ( tei_model.personLike   tei_listPerson )*,     ( tei_model.placeLike   tei_listPlace )*,     tei_model.objectLike*,     ( relation   listRelation ) *   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.15. <eventName>

<eventName> (name of an event) contains a proper noun or noun phrase used to refer to an event. [14.2.4. Event Names]	
Module	namesdates

## Attributes

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:base
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
    - \* @rendition
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source
- att.dateable
  - @period
  - att.dateable.custom
    - \* @when-custom
    - \* @notBefore-custom
    - \* @notAfter-custom
    - \* @from-custom
    - \* @to-custom
    - \* @datingPoint
    - \* @datingMethod
  - att.dateable.iso
    - \* @when-iso
    - \* @notBefore-iso
    - \* @notAfter-iso
    - \* @from-iso
    - \* @to-iso
  - att.dateable.w3c
    - \* @when
    - \* @notBefore
    - \* @notAfter



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @evidence</li> <li>– @instant</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.personal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @full</li> <li>– @sort</li> <li>– att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @role</li> <li>* @nymRef</li> <li>* att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ @key</li> <li>+ @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Member of	<u>model.nameLike</u>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Example	<pre> &lt;listEvent&gt;   &lt;event from="1939-09-01" to="1945-09-02"&gt;     &lt;eventName xml:lang="de"&gt;Zweiter Weltkrieg&lt;/eventName&gt;     &lt;eventName xml:lang="en"&gt;World War II&lt;/eventName&gt;     &lt;idno type="GND"&gt;https://d-nb.info/gnd/4079167-1&lt;/idno&gt;     &lt;idno type="Wikidata"&gt;https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q362&lt;/idno&gt;     &lt;event from="1939-09-01" to="1939-10-06"       xml:id="UeberfallAufPolen"&gt;       &lt;eventName xml:lang="de"&gt;Überfall auf Polen&lt;/eventName&gt;       &lt;eventName xml:lang="en"&gt;Invasion of Poland&lt;/eventName&gt;       &lt;idno type="GND"&gt;https://d-nb.info/gnd/4175002-0&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;idno type="LOC"&gt;https://id.loc.gov/authorities/sh85148341&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;listPlace type="affected"&gt;         &lt;place&gt;           &lt;placeName xml:lang="pl"&gt;Gdańsk&lt;/placeName&gt;           &lt;location&gt;             &lt;geo&gt;54.350556 18.652778&lt;/geo&gt;           &lt;/location&gt;         &lt;/place&gt;       &lt;/listPlace&gt;     &lt;/event&gt;     &lt;event from="1941-06-22" to="1945-05-09"&gt;       &lt;eventName xml:lang="de"&gt;Deutsch-Sowjetischer Krieg&lt;/eventName&gt;       &lt;eventName xml:lang="ru"&gt;#####&lt;/eventName&gt;       &lt;idno type="GND"&gt;https://d-nb.info/gnd/4076906-9&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;idno type="Wikidata"&gt;https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q189266&lt;/idno&gt;     &lt;/event&gt;   &lt;/listEvent&gt; </pre>
Example	<pre> &lt;p&gt;On &lt;date when="1719-03-19"&gt;Monday&lt;/date&gt;, &lt;rs type="person"&gt;she&lt;/rs&gt; was writing about the &lt;eventName ref="#SecondDefPrague"&gt;1618 Defenestration of Prague&lt;/eventName&gt; which initiated the &lt;rs type="event" ref="#ThirtyYearsWar"&gt;long war&lt;/rs&gt;.&lt;/p&gt; </pre>
Example	<pre> &lt;event from="2019-09-16" to="2019-09-20"   xml:id="tei2019graz"&gt;   &lt;eventName type="full"&gt;TEI 2019: What is text, really? TEI and beyond&lt;/eventName&gt;   &lt;eventName type="short"&gt;TEI 2019&lt;/eventName&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;note&gt; The abstract leading to the &lt;gi&gt;eventName&lt;/gi&gt; element is available at &lt;ref target="https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019"&gt;https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019 Other related documents are available through &lt;ref target="https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019"&gt;https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019 &lt;ref target="https://zenodo.org/communities/tei2019"&gt;TEI 2019 Zenodo community&lt;/ref&gt;. &lt;/note&gt; &lt;listPerson type="LocalOrganizers"&gt;   &lt;person&gt;     &lt;persName&gt;       &lt;surname&gt;Raunig&lt;/surname&gt;       &lt;forename&gt;Elisabeth&lt;/forename&gt;     &lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;/person&gt;   &lt;person&gt;     &lt;persName&gt;       &lt;surname&gt;Scholger&lt;/surname&gt;       &lt;forename&gt;Martina&lt;/forename&gt;     &lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;/person&gt;   &lt;person&gt;     &lt;persName&gt;       &lt;surname&gt;Scholger&lt;/surname&gt;       &lt;forename&gt;Walter&lt;/forename&gt;     &lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;/person&gt;   &lt;person&gt;     &lt;persName&gt;       &lt;surname&gt;Steiner&lt;/surname&gt;       &lt;forename&gt;Elisabeth&lt;/forename&gt;     &lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;/person&gt;   &lt;person&gt;     &lt;persName&gt;       &lt;surname&gt;Vogeler&lt;/surname&gt;       &lt;forename&gt;Georg&lt;/forename&gt;     &lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;/person&gt; &lt;/listPerson&gt; &lt;place xml:lang="de"&gt;   &lt;placeName&gt;Universität Graz&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;location&gt;     &lt;address&gt;       &lt;addrLine&gt;ReSoWi Gebäude&lt;/addrLine&gt;       &lt;addrLine&gt;Universitätsstraße 15&lt;/addrLine&gt;       &lt;postCode&gt;8010&lt;/postCode&gt;       &lt;settlement&gt;Graz&lt;/settlement&gt;       &lt;country&gt;Österreich&lt;/country&gt;     &lt;/address&gt;     &lt;geo&gt;15.451651587656 47.078215112534&lt;/geo&gt;   &lt;/location&gt; &lt;/place&gt; &lt;listRelation&gt;   &lt;relation active="#tei2019graz"     passive="#AnnualTEIConference" type="CRM" name="P31_is_instance_of"     ref="https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Property:P31"/&gt; &lt;/listRelation&gt; &lt;/event&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element eventName {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.dataable.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.personal.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.16. <fileDesc>

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>att.global       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@xml:id</li> <li>@n</li> <li>@xml:lang</li> <li>@xml:base</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>teiHeader</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>titleStmt</u>
<b>Note</b>	The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;fileDesc&gt;   &lt;titleStmt&gt;     &lt;title&gt;The shortest possible TEI document&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;/titleStmt&gt;   &lt;publicationStmt&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Distributed as part of TEI P5&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;p&gt;No print source exists: this is an original digital text&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/sourceDesc&gt; &lt;/fileDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;sequence&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="titleStmt"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="editionStmt"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="publicationStmt"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="seriesStmt"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="notesStmt"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="sourceDesc"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element fileDesc {   tei_att.global.attributes,   (     ( </pre>

	<pre>         tei_titleStmt,         editionStmt?,         extent?,         tei_publicationStmt,         seriesStmt*,         notesStmt?     ),     tei_sourceDesc+ ) } </pre>
--	--

### Appendix A.1.17. <forename>

<forename> (forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.personal             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @full</li> <li>– @sort</li> <li>– att.naming                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @role</li> <li>* @nymRef</li> <li>* att.canonical                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ @key</li> <li>+ @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.persNamePart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation country eventName forename nameLink org placeName roleName surname</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date name note ptr term title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;persName&gt; &lt;roleName&gt;Ex-President&lt;/roleName&gt; &lt;forename&gt;George&lt;/forename&gt; &lt;surname&gt;Bush&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/persName&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element forename {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.personal.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.18. <idno>

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [14.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- \* @style
- \* @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.dataable
  - @period
  - att.dataable.custom
    - \* @when-custom
    - \* @notBefore-custom
    - \* @notAfter-custom
    - \* @from-custom
    - \* @to-custom
    - \* @datingPoint
    - \* @datingMethod
  - att.dataable.iso
    - \* @when-iso
    - \* @notBefore-iso
    - \* @notAfter-iso
    - \* @from-iso
    - \* @to-iso
  - att.dataable.w3c
    - \* @when
    - \* @notBefore
    - \* @notAfter
    - \* @from
    - \* @to
- att.sortable
  - @sortKey
- att.typed
  - type
  - @subtype

type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

**Derived from** [att.typed](#)

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [teidata.enumerated](#)

	<p><b>Suggested values include:</b></p> <p><b>ISBN</b> International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.</p> <p><b>ISSN</b> International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.</p> <p><b>DOI</b> Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.</p> <p><b>URI</b> Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource, following the syntax of RFC 3986.</p> <p><b>VIAF</b> A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.</p> <p><b>ESTC</b> English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.</p> <p><b>OCLC</b> OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.nameLike</u> <u>model.personPart</u> <u>model.publicationStmntPart.detail</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>idno</u> <u>licence</u> <u>publicationStmnt</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	<u>&lt;idno&gt;</u> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for <i>type</i> on <u>&lt;idno&gt;</u> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;idno type="ISBN"&gt;978-1-906964-22-1&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="ISSN"&gt;0143-3385&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="DOI"&gt;10.1000/123&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="URI"&gt;http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="URI"&gt;http://authority.nzetc.org/463/&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="LT"&gt;Thomason Tract E.537 (17)&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="Wing"&gt;C695&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="ol&amp;Cat"&gt;   &lt;g ref="#sym"/&gt;345 &lt;/idno&gt; </pre> <p>In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <code>&lt;glyph&gt;</code> or <code>&lt;char&gt;</code> element referenced here as <code>#sym</code>.</p>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="idno"/&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element idno {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.data.table.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute type   {     "ISBN"   "ISSN"   "DOI"   "URI"   "VIAF"   "ESTC"   "OCLC"   }?,   ( text   tei_model.gLike   tei_idno ) * } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.19. <item>

<item> (item) contains one component of a list. [3.8. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Contained by	core: <u>list</u>
May contain	<p>core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u></p> <p>header: <u>idno</u></p> <p>namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u></p> <p>character data</p>



<b>Note</b>	<p>May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.</p> <p>Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global <i>n</i> attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the <i>n</i> attribute on the <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <code>&lt;label&gt;</code> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <code>&lt;label&gt;</code> element, not <i>n</i>.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;list rend="numbered"&gt; &lt;head&gt;Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV&lt;/head&gt; &lt;item n="4.1"&gt;The death of Queen Clotild.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item n="4.2"&gt;How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item n="4.3"&gt;The wives and children of Lothar.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item n="4.4"&gt;The Counts of the Bretons.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item n="4.5"&gt;Saint Gall the Bishop.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item n="4.6"&gt;The priest Cato.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt; ...&lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element item {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_macro.specialPara }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.20. `<licence>`

<code>&lt;licence&gt;</code> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.dateable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @period</li> <li>– att.dateable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-custom</li> <li>* @notBefore-custom</li> <li>* @notAfter-custom</li> <li>* @from-custom</li> <li>* @to-custom</li> <li>* @datingPoint</li> <li>* @datingMethod</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dateable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-iso</li> <li>* @notBefore-iso</li> <li>* @notAfter-iso</li> <li>* @from-iso</li> <li>* @to-iso</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dateable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when</li> <li>* @notBefore</li> <li>* @notAfter</li> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.pointing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @targetLang</li> <li>– @target</li> <li>– @evaluate</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Member of	<u>model.availabilityPart</u>
Contained by	<b>header:</b> <u>availability</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Note	A <u>&lt;licence&gt;</u> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The <i>target</i> attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The <i>when</i> , <i>notBefore</i> , <i>notAfter</i> , <i>from</i> or <i>to</i> attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.
Example	<pre>&lt;licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"&gt; Licence &lt;/licence&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;availability&gt; &lt;licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/" notBefore="2013-01-01"&gt; &lt;p&gt;The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence applies to this document.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;The licence was added on January 1, 2013.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/licence&gt; &lt;/availability&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

Creative Commons At

Schema Declaration	<pre> element licence {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.dataable.attributes,   tei_att.pointing.attributes,   tei_macro.specialPara } </pre>
--------------------	---

### Appendix A.1.21. <list>

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<p>type (type) describes the nature of the items in the list.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p>

	<p><b>Suggested values include:</b></p> <p><b>gloss</b> (gloss) each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <code>&lt;label&gt;</code> element preceding the list item.</p> <p><b>in-dex</b> (index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.</p> <p><b>in-struction</b> (instructions) each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.</p> <p><b>litany</b> (litany) each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.</p> <p><b>syllogism</b> (syllogism) each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of <i>type</i> on <code>&lt;list&gt;</code> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the <i>rend</i> or <i>style</i> attributes for these aspects of a list, while using <i>type</i> for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.</p> <p>The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <code>&lt;label&gt;</code> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <code>&lt;list type="gloss"&gt;</code>; this is however a semantic error.</p>
Member of	<code>model.listLike</code>
Contained by	<p><b>core:</b> <code>desc item note p title</code></p> <p><b>header:</b> <code>licence sourceDesc</code></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <code>body</code></p>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <code>desc item note</code>
Note	May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.
Example	<pre>&lt;list rend="numbered"&gt;   &lt;item&gt;a butcher&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;a baker&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;a candlestick maker, with   &lt;list rend="bulleted"&gt;     &lt;item&gt;rings on his fingers&lt;/item&gt;     &lt;item&gt;bells on his toes&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;/list&gt; &lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted"&gt;   &lt;item&gt;All Cretans are liars.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;Epimenides is a Cretan.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;ERGO Epimenides is a liar.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;list type="litany" rend="simple"&gt;   &lt;item&gt;God save us from drought.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;God save us from pestilence.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;God save us from wickedness in high places.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;Praise be to God.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt;</pre>
Example	<p>The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):</p> <pre>&lt;div1 type="section"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;Athelstan's Ordinance&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;list rend="numbered"&gt;     &lt;item n="1"&gt;Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with       the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over</pre>

	<pre> eightpence. &lt;list rend="numbered"&gt;   &lt;item n="1.1"&gt;And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his     wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account – or to     clear himself by an oath of that amount.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item n="1.2"&gt;If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is     not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item n="1.3"&gt;If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may     then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him     that he will desist for ever.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item n="1.4"&gt;And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,     or to bring him back there.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item n="1.5"&gt;And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,     whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who     supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt; &lt;/item&gt; &lt;item n="2"&gt;Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom   no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a   person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting. &lt;list rend="numbered"&gt;   &lt;item n="2.1"&gt;And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day,     he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him     down as a thief.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item n="2.2"&gt;And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild     or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt; &lt;/item&gt; &lt;item n="3"&gt;Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds   his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and   120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as   often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had   refused him justice. &lt;list rend="numbered"&gt;   &lt;item n="3.1"&gt;And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes     known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first     occasion if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item n="3.2"&gt;And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been     an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt; &lt;/item&gt; &lt;item n="4"&gt;Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to   a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is   afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt; &lt;/div1&gt; </pre>
	<p>Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.</p>
Example	<pre> &lt;p&gt;These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy Cross. &lt;list rend="simple"&gt;   &lt;item&gt;I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have     subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy     Cross.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with     the sign of the Holy Cross.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the     sign of the Holy Cross.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the     sign of the Holy Cross.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with the sign of     the Holy Cross.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.&lt;/item&gt;   &lt;item&gt;I, Sigga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy     Cross.&lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt; &lt;/p&gt; </pre>
Schematron	<pre> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="tei:label"&gt;The content of a " gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.divTop"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;alternate&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="item"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="headLabel"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="headItem"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="label"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="item"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.divBottom"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element list {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute type   {     "gloss"   "index"   "instructions"   "litany"   "syllogism"   }?,   (     ( tei_model.divTop   tei_model.global   tei_desc* )*,     (       ( ( tei_item, tei_model.global* )+ )         (           headLabel?,           headItem?,           ( ( label, tei_model.global*, tei_item, tei_model.global* )+ )         )       ),     ( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )* )   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.22. <listEvent>

<listEvent> (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event.  
[14.3.1. Basic Principles]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @default</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Member of	<a href="#">model.eventLike</a> <a href="#">model.listLike</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">desc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a>
Example	<pre> &lt;listEvent&gt; &lt;head&gt;Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky&lt;/head&gt; &lt;event xml:id="event01" when="1861-09-19"&gt; &lt;label&gt;Barbourville&lt;/label&gt; &lt;desc&gt;The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory in the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the invasion, which was finally thwarted at the &lt;ref target="#event02"&gt;Battle of Camp Wildcat&lt;/ref&gt; in October.&lt;/desc&gt; &lt;/event&gt; &lt;event xml:id="event02" when="1861-10-21"&gt; &lt;label&gt;Camp Wild Cat&lt;/label&gt; &lt;desc&gt;The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and marked the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of Kentucky.&lt;/desc&gt; &lt;/event&gt; &lt;event xml:id="event03" from="1864-06-11" to="1864-06-12"&gt; &lt;label&gt;Cynthiana&lt;/label&gt; &lt;desc&gt;The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar's Bridge) was an engagement during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864, in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the raiders and saved the town from capture.&lt;/desc&gt; &lt;/event&gt; &lt;/listEvent&gt; </pre>

<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.eventLike"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="relation"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element listEvent {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.declarable.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   (     tei_model.headLike*,     tei_desc*,     ( relation   listRelation )*,     ( ( tei_model.eventLike+, ( relation   listRelation )* )+ )   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.23. <listOrg>

**<listOrg>** (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [14.2.2. Organizational Names]

<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @default</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.listLike</u> <u>model.orgPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>desc</u> <u>item</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>title</u> <b>corpus:</b> <u>particDesc</u> <b>header:</b> <u>licence</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listOrg</u> <u>org</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>desc</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listOrg</u> <u>org</u>
<b>Note</b>	The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listOrg&gt;   &lt;head&gt;Libyans&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;org&gt;     &lt;orgName&gt;Adyrmachidae&lt;/orgName&gt;     &lt;desc&gt;These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but       use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of       bronze [...]&lt;/desc&gt;   &lt;/org&gt;   &lt;org&gt;     &lt;orgName&gt;Nasamonians&lt;/orgName&gt;     &lt;desc&gt;In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up       the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the       palms [...]&lt;/desc&gt;   &lt;/org&gt;   &lt;org&gt;     &lt;orgName&gt;Garamantians&lt;/orgName&gt;     &lt;desc&gt;[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no       weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]&lt;/desc&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/org&gt; &lt;/listOrg&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" </pre>

	<pre> maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="org" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="1"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="listOrg" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="1"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="relation"     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element listOrg {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.declarable.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   (     tei_model.headLike*,     tei_desc*,     ( relation   listRelation )*,     ( ( tei_org   tei_listOrg )+, ( relation   listRelation )* )+ )   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.24. <listPerson>

**<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [14.3.2. The Person Element 16.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @default</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Member of	<a href="#">model.listLike</a> <a href="#">model.orgPart</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>corpus:</b> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">org</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">desc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">person</a>
Note	The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.
Example	<pre> &lt;listPerson type="respondents"&gt;   &lt;personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/&gt;   &lt;person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/&gt;   &lt;person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/&gt;   &lt;listRelation&gt;     &lt;relation type="personal" name="spouse"       mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/&gt;   &lt;/listRelation&gt; &lt;/listPerson&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.personLike"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="listPerson"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="relation"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element listPerson {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.declarable.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes, </pre>

	<pre>         tei_att.typed.attributes,         (             tei_model.headLike*,             tei_desc*,             ( relation   listRelation )*,             (                 (                     ( tei_model.personLike   tei_listPerson )+,                     ( relation   listRelation )*                 )+             )         )     } </pre>
--	--

### Appendix A.1.25. <listPlace>

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 14.3.4. Places]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @default</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Member of	<a href="#">model.listLike</a> <a href="#">model.orgPart</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>corpus:</b> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">place</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">desc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">place</a>
Example	<pre>&lt;listPlace type="offshoreIslands"&gt;   &lt;place&gt;     &lt;placeName&gt;La roche qui pleure&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;/place&gt;   &lt;place&gt;     &lt;placeName&gt;Ile aux cerfs&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;/place&gt; &lt;/listPlace&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.placeLike"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="listPlace"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="relation"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element listPlace {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.declarable.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   (     tei_model.headLike*,     tei_desc*,     ( relation   listRelation )*,     (       (         ( tei_model.placeLike   tei_listPlace )+,         ( relation   listRelation )*       )+     )   ) }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.26. <name>

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.6.1. Referring Strings]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>att.global           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@xml:id</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:base
- @xml:space
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
  - \* @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.dataable
  - @period
  - att.dataable.custom
    - \* @when-custom
    - \* @notBefore-custom
    - \* @notAfter-custom
    - \* @from-custom
    - \* @to-custom
    - \* @datingPoint
    - \* @datingMethod
  - att.dataable.iso
    - \* @when-iso
    - \* @notBefore-iso
    - \* @notAfter-iso
    - \* @from-iso
    - \* @to-iso
  - att.dataable.w3c
    - \* @when
    - \* @notBefore

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @notAfter</li> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @evidence</li> <li>– @instant</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.personal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @full</li> <li>– @sort</li> <li>– att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @role</li> <li>* @nymRef</li> <li>* att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ @key</li> <li>+ @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.nameLike.agent</u> <u>model.personPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> <u>place-Name</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;name type="person"&gt;Thomas Hoccleve&lt;/name&gt; &lt;name type="place"&gt;Villingaholt&lt;/name&gt; &lt;name type="org"&gt;Vetus Latina Institut&lt;/name&gt; &lt;name type="person" ref="#HOC001"&gt;Occleve&lt;/name&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element name {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.datable.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.personal.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.27. <nameLink>

<nameLink> (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as <i>van der</i> or <i>of</i> . [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates

Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@xml:id</li> <li>@n</li> <li>@xml:lang</li> <li>@xml:base</li> <li>@xml:space</li> <li>att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@corresp</li> <li>@synch</li> <li>@sameAs</li> <li>@copyOf</li> <li>@next</li> <li>@prev</li> <li>@exclude</li> <li>@select</li> </ul> </li> <li>att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@rend</li> <li>@style</li> <li>@rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@cert</li> <li>@resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@type</li> <li>@subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Member of	<u>model.persNamePart</u>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Example	<pre>&lt;persName&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;Frederick&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;nameLink&gt;van der&lt;/nameLink&gt;   &lt;surname&gt;Tronck&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/persName&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;persName&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;Alfred&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;nameLink&gt;de&lt;/nameLink&gt;   &lt;surname&gt;Muset&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/persName&gt;</pre>
Content model	



	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element nameLink {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.28. <note>

<note> (note) contains a note or annotation. [3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 10.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.anchoring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @anchored</li> <li>– @targetEnd</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.placement <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @place</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.pointing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @targetLang</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @target</li> <li>– @evaluate</li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.written <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @hand</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.noteLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u> <u>text</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<p>In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":</p> <pre> And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly &lt;note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH"&gt; &lt;term xml:lang="de"&gt;Malerisch&lt;/term&gt;. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as &lt;mentioned&gt;picturesque&lt;/mentioned&gt; and &lt;mentioned&gt;painterly&lt;/mentioned&gt; respectively. &lt;/note&gt; style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.  &lt;!-- elsewhere in the document --&gt; &lt;respStmt xml:id="MDMH"&gt; &lt;resp&gt;translation from German to English&lt;/resp&gt; &lt;name&gt;Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt; </pre> <p>For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The global <i>n</i> attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:</p> <pre> Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century, &lt;note n="126" anchored="true"&gt; The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. &lt;/note&gt; is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann. </pre> <p>However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.</p>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element note {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.anchoring.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.placement.attributes,   tei_att.pointing.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes, </pre>

```

    tei_att.written.attributes,
    tei_macro.specialPara
}

```

## Appendix A.1.29. <org>

<org> (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [14.3.3. Organizational Data]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @evidence</li> <li>– @instant</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <div> <div>role</div> <div>specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.</div> <div> <div>Status</div> <div>Optional</div> </div> <div> <div>Datatype</div> <div>1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace</div> </div> <div> <div>Note</div> <div>Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, familyGroup, or politicalParty, each of which</div> </div> </div>

	<p>should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <a href="#">&lt;desc&gt;</a> for each <a href="#">&lt;valItem&gt;</a> element in the schema specification of the project's customization.</p>
Member of	<a href="#">model.personLike</a>
Contained by	<b>corpus:</b> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">org</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a>
Example	<pre> &lt;org xml:id="JAMs"&gt;   &lt;orgName&gt;Justified Ancients of Mummu&lt;/orgName&gt;   &lt;desc&gt;An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by   &lt;persName&gt;Hagbard Celine&lt;/persName&gt;, who fight the Illuminati     from a golden submarine, the &lt;name&gt;Leif Ericson&lt;/name&gt;   &lt;/desc&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;author&gt;Robert Shea&lt;/author&gt;     &lt;author&gt;Robert Anton Wilson&lt;/author&gt;     &lt;title&gt;The Illuminatus! Trilogy&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/org&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.labelLike"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.nameLike"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.placeLike"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.orgPart"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.noteLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="linkGrp"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="link"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="ptr"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.personLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element org {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   attribute role { list { + } }?,   (     tei_model.headLike*,     (       tei_model.pLike*         (         tei_model.labelLike           tei_model.nameLike           tei_model.placeLike           tei_model.orgPart           tei_model.milestoneLike       )*     ),     ( tei_model.noteLike   tei_model.biblLike   linkGrp   link   tei_ptr )*,     tei_model.personLike*   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.30. <p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @decls</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.fragmentable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @part</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.written <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @hand</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Member of	<u>model.pLike</u>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <u>item</u> <u>note</u> <b>corpus:</b> <u>particDesc</u> <u>settingDesc</u> <b>header:</b> <u>availability</u> <u>encodingDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <u>publicationStmnt</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>event</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>

	character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;p&gt;Hallgerd was outside. &lt;q&gt;There is blood on your axe,&lt;/q&gt; she said. &lt;q&gt;What have you done?&lt;/q&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;q&gt;I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,&lt;/q&gt; replied Thjostolf. &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;q&gt;Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,&lt;/q&gt; she said. &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;q&gt;Yes,&lt;/q&gt; said Thjostolf. &lt;q&gt;And now you must think up some plan for me.&lt;/q&gt; &lt;/p&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:p"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or ancestor::tei:p) and not( an- cestor::tei:floatingText   parent::tei:exemplum   parent::tei:item   parent::tei:note   par- ent::tei:q   parent::tei:quote   parent::tei:remarks   parent::tei:said   parent::tei:sp   paren- t::tei:stage   parent::tei:cell   parent::tei:figure )"&gt; Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. &lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:l//tei:p"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText   parent::tei:fig- ure   parent::tei:note"&gt; Abstract model violation: Metrical lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descen- dant of floatingText. &lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element p {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.declaring.attributes,   tei_att.fragmentable.attributes,   tei_att.written.attributes,   tei_macro.paraContent } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.31. <particDesc>

<particDesc> (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [16.2. Contextual Information]	
<b>Module</b>	corpus
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @default</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.profileDescPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>profileDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> p <b>namesdates:</b> listOrg listPerson org person
<b>Note</b>	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;particDesc&gt;   &lt;listPerson&gt;     &lt;person xml:id="P-1234" sex="2" age="mid"&gt;       &lt;p&gt;Female informant, well-educated, born in         Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently.         Socio-Economic status B2.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/person&gt;     &lt;person xml:id="P-4332" sex="1"&gt;       &lt;persName&gt;         &lt;surname&gt;Hancock&lt;/surname&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;Antony&lt;/forename&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;Aloysius&lt;/forename&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;St John&lt;/forename&gt;       &lt;/persName&gt;       &lt;residence notAfter="1959"&gt;         &lt;address&gt;           &lt;street&gt;Railway Cuttings&lt;/street&gt;           &lt;settlement&gt;East Cheam&lt;/settlement&gt;         &lt;/address&gt;       &lt;/residence&gt;       &lt;occupation&gt;comedian&lt;/occupation&gt;     &lt;/person&gt;     &lt;listRelation&gt;       &lt;relation type="personal" name="spouse"         mutual="#P-1234 #P-4332"/&gt;     &lt;/listRelation&gt;   &lt;/listPerson&gt; &lt;/particDesc&gt; </pre> <p>This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates.</p>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.personLike"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listPerson"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listOrg"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element particDesc {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.declarable.attributes,   (     tei_model.pLike+       ( tei_model.personLike   tei_listPerson   tei_listOrg )+   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.32. <person>

<person> (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [14.3.2. The Person Element 16.2.2. The Participant Description]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @evidence</li> <li>– @instant</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <div> <div>role</div> <div> <div>specifies a primary role or classification for the person.</div> <div> <b>Status</b> Optional </div> <div> <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace </div> <div> <b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a &lt;valList&gt; element in the project schema specification. </div> </div> </div> <div> <div>sex</div> <div> <div>specifies the sex of the person.</div> <div> <b>Status</b> Optional </div> <div> <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.sex</u> separated by whitespace </div> </div> </div>



	<p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p> <p><b>gender</b> specifies the gender of the person.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.gender</u> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p> <p><b>age</b> specifies an age group for the person.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a &lt;valList&gt; element in the project schema specification.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.personLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>corpus:</b> <u>particDesc</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>event listPerson org</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl name note p ptr</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation event listEvent</u>
<b>Note</b>	May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the <u>model.personPart</u> class.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;person sex="F" age="adult"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French.   status B2.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;person sex="intersex" role="god" age="immortal"&gt;   &lt;persName&gt;Hermaphroditos&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;persName xml:lang="grc"&gt;##u#####&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="M" role="poet"&gt;   &lt;persName xml:lang="en"&gt;Ovid&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;persName xml:lang="la"&gt;Publius Ovidius Naso&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;birth when="-0044-03-20"&gt; 20 March 43 BC &lt;placeName&gt;     &lt;settlement type="city"&gt;Sulmona&lt;/settlement&gt;     &lt;country key="IT"&gt;Italy&lt;/country&gt;   &lt;/placeName&gt; &lt;/birth&gt;   &lt;death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018"&gt;17 or 18 AD &lt;placeName&gt;     &lt;settlement type="city"&gt;Tomis (Constanta)&lt;/settlement&gt;     &lt;country key="RO"&gt;Romania&lt;/country&gt;   &lt;/placeName&gt; &lt;/death&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The following exemplifies an adaptation of the vCard standard to indicate an unknown gender for a fictional character.</p> <pre>&lt;person xml:id="ariel" gender="U"&gt;   &lt;persName&gt;Ariel&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;note&gt;Character in &lt;title level="m"&gt;The Tempest&lt;/title&gt;.&lt;/note&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.personPart"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="ptr"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element person {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   attribute role { list { + } }?,   attribute sex { list { + } }?,   attribute gender { list { + } }?,   attribute age { text }?,   (     tei_model.pLike+       ( tei_model.personPart   tei_model.global   tei_ptr ) *   ) } </pre>
---------------------------	---

### Appendix A.1.33. <place>

<place> (place) contains data about a geographic location. [14.3.4. Places]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @evidence</li> <li>– @instant</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Member of	<u>model.placeLike</u>
Contained by	<b>corpus:</b> <u>settingDesc</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>event listPlace org place</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl desc name note p ptr</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country event listEvent listPlace place placeName</u>
Example	<pre> &lt;place&gt;   &lt;country&gt;Lithuania&lt;/country&gt;   &lt;country xml:lang="lt"&gt;Lietuva&lt;/country&gt;   &lt;place&gt;     &lt;settlement&gt;Vilnius&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;/place&gt;   &lt;place&gt;     &lt;settlement&gt;Kaunas&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;/place&gt; &lt;/place&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.labelLike"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.eventLike"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="name"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.noteLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="idno"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="ptr"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="linkGrp"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="link"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.placeLike"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listPlace"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element place {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   (     tei_model.headLike*,     (       tei_model.pLike*         (         tei_model.labelLike           tei_model.placeStateLike           tei_model.eventLike           tei_name       )*     ),     (       tei_model.noteLike         tei_model.biblLike         tei_idno         tei_ptr         linkGrp         link     )*,     ( tei_model.placeLike   tei_listPlace ) *   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.34. <placeName>

<placeName> (place name) contains an absolute or relative place name. [14.2.3. Place Names]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.dataable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @period</li> <li>– att.dataable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-custom</li> <li>* @notBefore-custom</li> <li>* @notAfter-custom</li> <li>* @from-custom</li> <li>* @to-custom</li> <li>* @datingPoint</li> <li>* @datingMethod</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dataable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-iso</li> <li>* @notBefore-iso</li> <li>* @notAfter-iso</li> <li>* @from-iso</li> <li>* @to-iso</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when</li> <li>* @notBefore</li> <li>* @notAfter</li> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @evidence</li> <li>– @instant</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.personal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @full</li> <li>– @sort</li> <li>– att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @role</li> <li>* @nymRef</li> <li>* att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ @key</li> <li>+ @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.placeNamePart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>role-</u> <u>Name</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>sur-</u> <u>name</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;placeName&gt; &lt;settlement&gt;Rochester&lt;/settlement&gt; &lt;region&gt;New York&lt;/region&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;placeName&gt; &lt;geogName&gt;Arrochar Alps&lt;/geogName&gt; &lt;region&gt;Argylshire&lt;/region&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;placeName&gt; &lt;measure&gt;10 miles&lt;/measure&gt; &lt;offset&gt;Northeast of&lt;/offset&gt; &lt;settlement&gt;Attica&lt;/settlement&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element placeName {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.dataable.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.personal.attributes,</pre>

```

    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}

```

### Appendix A.1.35. <profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.teiHeaderPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>teiHeader</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>corpus:</b> <u>particDesc</u> <u>settingDesc</u>
<b>Note</b>	Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;profileDesc&gt;   &lt;langUsage&gt;     &lt;language ident="fr"&gt;French&lt;/language&gt;   &lt;/langUsage&gt;   &lt;textDesc n="novel"&gt;     &lt;channel mode="w"&gt;print; part issues&lt;/channel&gt;     &lt;constitution type="single"/&gt;     &lt;derivation type="original"/&gt;     &lt;domain type="art"/&gt;     &lt;factuality type="fiction"/&gt;     &lt;interaction type="none"/&gt;     &lt;preparedness type="prepared"/&gt;     &lt;purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/&gt;     &lt;purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/&gt;   &lt;/textDesc&gt;   &lt;settingDesc&gt;     &lt;setting&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;name&gt;Paris, France&lt;/name&gt; &lt;time&gt;Late 19th century&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/setting&gt; &lt;/settingDesc&gt; &lt;/profileDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.profileDescPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element profileDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_model.profileDescPart* } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.36. <ptr>

<ptr> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 17.1. Links]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cReferencing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @cRef</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @decls</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.internetMedia <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @mimeType</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.pointing</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @targetLang</li> <li>– @target</li> <li>– @evaluate</li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.ptrLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>May contain</b>	Empty element
<b>Note</b>	The <i>target</i> and <i>cRef</i> attributes are mutually exclusive.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;ptr target="#p143 #p144"/&gt; &lt;ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/&gt; &lt;ptr cRef="1.3.4"/&gt;</pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<sch:rule context="tei:ptr"> <sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <sch:name/>.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element ptr {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.declaring.attributes,   tei_att.internetMedia.attributes,   tei_att.pointing.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   empty }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.37. <pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @select</li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @role</li> <li>– @nymRef</li> <li>– att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @key</li> <li>* @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.imprintPart</u> <u>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>publicationStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>sur-name</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Oxford University Press&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Oxford&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date&gt;1989&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element pubPlace {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.naming.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.38. <publicationStmt>

<b>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</b> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>fileDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <b>header:</b> <u>availability</u> <u>idno</u>
<b>Note</b>	Where a publication statement contains several members of the <code>model.publicationStmtPart.agency</code> or <code>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</code> classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;C. Muquardt &lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date when="1846"/&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Chadwyck Healey&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Cambridge&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;availability&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Available under licence only&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/availability&gt;   &lt;date when="1992"&gt;1992&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Zea Books&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Lincoln, NE&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date&gt;2017&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;availability&gt;     &lt;p&gt;This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/availability&gt;   &lt;ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element publicationStmt {   tei_att.global.attributes,   (     (       (         tei_model.publicationStmtPart.agency,         tei_model.publicationStmtPart.detail*       )+     )       tei_model.pLike+   ) } </pre>
---------------------------	---

### Appendix A.1.39. <publisher>

<p><b>&lt;publisher&gt;</b> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @key</li> <li>– @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>publicationStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u>

	<b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>sur-name</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;imprint&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Oxford&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Clarendon Press&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;date&gt;1987&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/imprint&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element publisher {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.canonical.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.40. <resp>

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @key</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @ref</li> <li>• att.dateable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @period</li> <li>– att.dateable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-custom</li> <li>* @notBefore-custom</li> <li>* @notAfter-custom</li> <li>* @from-custom</li> <li>* @to-custom</li> <li>* @datingPoint</li> <li>* @datingMethod</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dateable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-iso</li> <li>* @notBefore-iso</li> <li>* @notAfter-iso</li> <li>* @from-iso</li> <li>* @to-iso</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dateable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when</li> <li>* @notBefore</li> <li>* @notAfter</li> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Contained by	core: <a href="#">respStmt</a>
May contain	core: <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">title</a> header: <a href="#">idno</a> namesdates: <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> character data
Note	The attribute <i>ref</i> , inherited from the class <i>att.canonical</i> may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <a href="http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html">http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html</a> for bibliographic usage.
Example	<pre>&lt;respStmt&gt;   &lt;resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html"&gt;compiler&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;Edward Child&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element resp {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.canonical.attributes,   tei_att.dateable.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited }</pre>

### Appendix A.1.41. <respStmt>

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of

a bibliographic work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @key</li> <li>– @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.respLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>titleStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>resp</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;respStmt&gt;   &lt;resp&gt;transcribed from original ms&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;persName&gt;Claus Huitfeldt&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;respStmt&gt;   &lt;resp&gt;converted to XML encoding&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;Alan Morrison&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;alternate&gt;       &lt;sequence&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"           maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"   maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element respStmt {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.canonical.attributes,   (     (       ( tei_resp+, tei_model.nameLike.agent+ )         ( tei_model.nameLike.agent+, tei_resp+ )     ),     tei_note*   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.42. <roleName>

**<roleName>** (role name) contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [14.2.1. Personal Names]

Module	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.personal</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @full</li> <li>– @sort</li> <li>– att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @role</li> <li>* @nymRef</li> <li>* att.canonical</li> </ul> </li> <li>+ @key</li> <li>+ @ref</li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Member of	<u>model.persNamePart</u>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Note	A <u>&lt;roleName&gt;</u> may be distinguished from an <u>&lt;addName&gt;</u> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.
Example	<pre>&lt;persName&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;William&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;surname&gt;Poulteny&lt;/surname&gt;   &lt;roleName&gt;Earl of Bath&lt;/roleName&gt; &lt;/persName&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;p&gt;The &lt;roleName role="solicitor_general"&gt;S.G.&lt;/roleName&gt; is the only national public official, including the Supreme Court justices, required by statute to be "learned in the law."&lt;/p&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;p&gt;   &lt;persName ref="#NJF"&gt;     &lt;roleName role="solicitor_general"&gt;Solicitor General&lt;/roleName&gt; Noel J. Francisco&lt;/persName&gt;,     representing the administration, asserted in rebuttal that there was nothing to disavow (...)   &lt;persName ref="#NJF"&gt;Francisco&lt;/persName&gt; had violated the scrupulous standard of candor about the facts and   the law that &lt;roleName role="solicitor_general"&gt;S.G.s&lt;/roleName&gt;, in Republican and Democratic administrations   alike, have repeatedly said they must honor. &lt;/p&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element roleName {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.personal.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

#### Appendix A.1.43. <settingDesc>

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [16.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description]	
Module	corpus
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @default</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.profileDescPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>profileDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> p <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listPlace</u> <u>place</u>
<b>Note</b>	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> inside <standOff> should be preferred.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;settingDesc&gt; &lt;p&gt;Texts recorded in the Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988 &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/settingDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;elementRef key="setting"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.placeLike"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="listPlace"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element settingDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, ( tei_model.pLike+   ( setting   tei_model.placeLike   tei_listPlace )+ ) }</pre>

## Appendix A.1.44. <sourceDesc>

<p><b>&lt;sourceDesc&gt;</b> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as ‘born digital’ for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @default</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>fileDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>list</u> <u>p</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;sourceDesc&gt; &lt;bibl&gt;   &lt;title level="a"&gt;The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood&lt;/title&gt;. In   &lt;author&gt;Victor E Neuberg&lt;/author&gt;, &lt;title&gt;The Penny Histories&lt;/title&gt;.   &lt;publisher&gt;OUP&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;. &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;sourceDesc&gt; &lt;p&gt;Born digital: no previous source exists.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;classRef key="model.listLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element sourceDesc {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.declarable.attributes,   (     tei_model.pLike+       ( tei_model.biblLike   tei_model.sourceDescPart   tei_model.listLike )+   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.45. <surname>

<surname> (surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.personal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @full</li> <li>– @sort</li> <li>– att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @role</li> <li>* @nymRef</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* att.canonical</li> <li>+ @key</li> <li>+ @ref</li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.persNamePart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;surname type="combine"&gt;St John Stevas&lt;/surname&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element surname {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.personal.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

#### Appendix A.1.46. <taxonomy>

<taxonomy> (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> <li>– att.global.responsibility</li> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> <li>– att.global.source</li> <li>* @source</li> <li>• att.datcat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @datcat</li> <li>– @valueDatcat</li> <li>– @targetDatcat</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>classDecl taxonomy</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl desc</u> <b>header:</b> <u>category taxonomy</u>
<b>Note</b>	Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <u>&lt;taxonomy&gt;</u> element can be nested.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;taxonomy xml:id="tax.b"&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;Brown Corpus&lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.a"&gt;     &lt;catDesc&gt;Press Reportage&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.a1"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;Daily&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.a2"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;Sunday&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.a3"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;National&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.a4"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;Provincial&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.a5"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;Political&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.a6"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;Sports&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.d"&gt;     &lt;catDesc&gt;Religion&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.d1"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;Books&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="tax.b.d2"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;Periodicals and tracts&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;/category&gt; &lt;/taxonomy&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;taxonomy&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="literature"&gt;     &lt;catDesc&gt;Literature&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="poetry"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;Poetry&lt;/catDesc&gt;       &lt;category xml:id="sonnet"&gt;         &lt;catDesc&gt;Sonnet&lt;/catDesc&gt;         &lt;category xml:id="shakesSonnet"&gt;           &lt;catDesc&gt;Shakespearean Sonnet&lt;/catDesc&gt;         &lt;/category&gt;         &lt;category xml:id="petraSonnet"&gt;           &lt;catDesc&gt;Petrarchan Sonnet&lt;/catDesc&gt;         &lt;/category&gt;       &lt;/category&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="haiku"&gt;       &lt;catDesc&gt;Haiku&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="drama"&gt;     &lt;catDesc&gt;Drama&lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;category xml:id="meter"&gt;     &lt;catDesc&gt;Metrical Categories&lt;/catDesc&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="feet"&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;catDesc&gt;Metrical Feet&lt;/catDesc&gt; &lt;category xml:id="iambic"&gt;   &lt;catDesc&gt;Iambic&lt;/catDesc&gt; &lt;/category&gt; &lt;category xml:id="trochaic"&gt;   &lt;catDesc&gt;trochaic&lt;/catDesc&gt; &lt;/category&gt; &lt;/category&gt; &lt;category xml:id="feetNumber"&gt; &lt;catDesc&gt;Number of feet&lt;/catDesc&gt; &lt;category xml:id="pentameter"&gt;   &lt;catDesc&gt;&gt;Pentameter&lt;/catDesc&gt; &lt;/category&gt; &lt;category xml:id="tetrameter"&gt;   &lt;catDesc&gt;&gt;Tetrameter&lt;/catDesc&gt; &lt;/category&gt; &lt;/category&gt; &lt;/taxonomy&gt; &lt;!-- elsewhere in document --&gt; &lt;lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter"&gt;   &lt;l&gt;Shall I compare thee to a summer's day&lt;/l&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/lg&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="category"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="taxonomy"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.descLike"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="equiv" minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="gloss" minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="1"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="category"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="taxonomy"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;sequence&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="category"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="taxonomy"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element taxonomy {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.datcat.attributes,   (     (       ( tei_category   tei_taxonomy )+         (           ( tei_model.descLike   equiv   gloss )+,           ( tei_category   tei_taxonomy ) *         )     )       ( tei_model.biblLike, ( tei_category   tei_taxonomy ) * )   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.47. <teiHeader>

<b>&lt;teiHeader&gt;</b> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>att.global</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- @xml:id</li> <li>- @n</li> <li>- @xml:lang</li> <li>- @xml:base</li> <li>- @xml:space</li> <li>- att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>- att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>- att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>- att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Contained by	textstructure: <u>TEI</u>
May contain	header: <u>encodingDesc</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>profileDesc</u>
Note	One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.
Example	<pre> &lt;teiHeader&gt;   &lt;fileDesc&gt;     &lt;titleStmt&gt;       &lt;title&gt;Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;author&gt;Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)&lt;/author&gt;       &lt;respStmt&gt;         &lt;resp&gt;Originally prepared by&lt;/resp&gt;         &lt;name&gt;Trevor Howard-Hill&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/respStmt&gt;       &lt;respStmt&gt;         &lt;resp&gt;Revised and edited by&lt;/resp&gt;         &lt;name&gt;Christine Avern-Carr&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/respStmt&gt;     &lt;/titleStmt&gt;     &lt;publicationStmt&gt;       &lt;distributor&gt;Oxford Text Archive&lt;/distributor&gt;       &lt;address&gt;         &lt;addrLine&gt;13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK&lt;/addrLine&gt;       &lt;/address&gt;       &lt;idno type="OTA"&gt;119&lt;/idno&gt;       &lt;availability&gt;         &lt;p&gt;Freely available on a non-commercial basis.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/availability&gt;       &lt;date when="1968"&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;     &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;     &lt;sourceDesc&gt;       &lt;bibl&gt;The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)&lt;/bibl&gt;     &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;   &lt;/fileDesc&gt;   &lt;encodingDesc&gt;     &lt;projectDesc&gt;       &lt;p&gt;Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/projectDesc&gt;   &lt;/encodingDesc&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;/projectDesc&gt; &lt;editorialDecl&gt;   &lt;correction&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Turned letters are silently corrected.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/correction&gt;   &lt;normalization&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured       forms are not encoded.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/normalization&gt; &lt;/editorialDecl&gt; &lt;refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF"&gt;   &lt;cRefPattern matchPattern="(\\S+) ([^.]+)\\.\\.\\.*"     replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='\$1']/div2[@n='\$2']/lb[@n='\$3'])"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;a reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that       listed here: &lt;list&gt;         &lt;item&gt;the &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; value of the preceding &lt;gi&gt;lb&lt;/gi&gt;         &lt;/item&gt;         &lt;item&gt;a period&lt;/item&gt;         &lt;item&gt;the &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; value of the ancestor &lt;gi&gt;div2&lt;/gi&gt;         &lt;/item&gt;         &lt;item&gt;a space&lt;/item&gt;         &lt;item&gt;the &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; value of the parent &lt;gi&gt;div1&lt;/gi&gt;         &lt;/item&gt;       &lt;/list&gt;     &lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/cRefPattern&gt; &lt;/refsDecl&gt; &lt;/encodingDesc&gt; &lt;revisionDesc&gt;   &lt;list&gt;     &lt;item&gt;       &lt;date when="1989-04-12"&gt;12 Apr 89&lt;/date&gt; Last checked by CAC&lt;/item&gt;     &lt;item&gt;       &lt;date when="1989-03-01"&gt;1 Mar 89&lt;/date&gt; LB made new file&lt;/item&gt;     &lt;/list&gt;   &lt;/revisionDesc&gt; &lt;/teiHeader&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="fileDesc"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="revisionDesc"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element teiHeader {   tei_att.global.attributes,   ( tei_fileDesc, tei_model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? ) } </pre>

#### Appendix A.1.48. <term>

**<term>** (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]

<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cReferencing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @cRef</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @key</li> <li>– @ref</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @decls</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.pointing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @targetLang</li> <li>– @target</li> <li>– @evaluate</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @sortKey</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.emphLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>sur-name</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>sur-name</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	<p>When this element appears within an &lt;index&gt; element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a &lt;gloss&gt; element by means of its <i>ref</i> attribute; alternatively a &lt;gloss&gt; element may point to a &lt;term&gt; element by means of its <i>target</i> attribute.</p> <p>In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The &lt;term&gt; element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the</p>

	<p>philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <code>&lt;term&gt;</code> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.</p> <p>As with other members of the <code>att.canonical</code> class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the <code>ref</code> attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the <code>key</code> attribute). Because the mutually exclusive <code>target</code> and <code>cRef</code> attributes overlap with the function of the <code>ref</code> attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.</p>
Example	A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <code>&lt;term&gt;parser&lt;/term&gt;</code> , and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.
Example	<p>We may define <code>&lt;term xml:id="TDPV1" rend="sc"&gt;discoursal point of view&lt;/term&gt;</code> as</p> <p><code>&lt;gloss target="#TDPV1"&gt;</code>the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.<code>&lt;/gloss&gt;</code></p>
Example	<p>We may define <code>&lt;term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc"&gt;discoursal point of view&lt;/term&gt;</code> as</p> <p><code>&lt;gloss xml:id="TDPV2"&gt;</code>the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.<code>&lt;/gloss&gt;</code></p>
Example	We discuss Leech's concept of <code>&lt;term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc"&gt;discoursal point of view&lt;/term&gt;</code> below.
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element term {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,   tei_att.canonical.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.declaring.attributes,   tei_att.pointing.attributes,   tei_att.sortable.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

#### Appendix A.1.49. `<text>`

<code>&lt;text&gt;</code> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rendition</li> <li>– att.global.responsibility</li> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> <li>– att.global.source</li> <li>* @source</li> <li>• att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @decls</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.written <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @hand</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.resource</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>textstructure:</b> <u>TEI</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>note</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u>
<b>Note</b>	This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;text&gt; &lt;front&gt; &lt;docTitle&gt; &lt;titlePart&gt;Autumn Haze&lt;/titlePart&gt; &lt;/docTitle&gt; &lt;/front&gt; &lt;body&gt; &lt;l&gt;Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;That settles softly down upon the water?&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/body&gt; &lt;/text&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:</p> <pre> &lt;text&gt; &lt;front&gt; &lt;!-- front matter for the whole group --&gt; &lt;/front&gt; &lt;group&gt; &lt;text&gt; &lt;!-- first text --&gt; &lt;/text&gt; &lt;text&gt; &lt;!-- second text --&gt; &lt;/text&gt; &lt;/group&gt; &lt;/text&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="0"&gt; &lt;elementRef key="front"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;alternate&gt; &lt;elementRef key="body"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="group"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="0"&gt; &lt;elementRef key="back"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; </pre>

	</content>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element text {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.declaring.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_att.written.attributes,   (     tei_model.global*,     ( ( front, tei_model.global* )? ),     ( tei_body   group ),     tei_model.global*,     ( ( back, tei_model.global* )? )   ) } </pre>

### Appendix A.1.50. <title>

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @key</li> <li>– @ref</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @generatedBy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.dataable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @period</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– att.dataable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-custom</li> <li>* @notBefore-custom</li> <li>* @notAfter-custom</li> <li>* @from-custom</li> <li>* @to-custom</li> <li>* @datingPoint</li> <li>* @datingMethod</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dataable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when-iso</li> <li>* @notBefore-iso</li> <li>* @notAfter-iso</li> <li>* @from-iso</li> <li>* @to-iso</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @when</li> <li>* @notBefore</li> <li>* @notAfter</li> <li>* @from</li> <li>* @to</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– type</li> <li>– @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
type	<p>classifies the title according to some convenient typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Sample values include:</b> <b>main</b> main title</p> <p><b>sub</b> (subordinate) subtitle, title of part</p> <p><b>alt</b> (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known</p> <p><b>short</b> abbreviated form of title</p> <p><b>desc</b> (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title</p> <p><b>Note</b> This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <a href="#">&lt;title&gt;</a> element.</p>
level	<p>indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.</p>

	<p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.</li> <li><b>m</b> (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works</li> <li><b>j</b> (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper</li> <li><b>s</b> (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection</li> <li><b>u</b> (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <code>&lt;analytic&gt;</code> element is <i>ipso facto</i> of level 'a', and one appearing within a <code>&lt;series&gt;</code> element of level 's'. For this reason, the <i>level</i> attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.emphLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">catDesc</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">titleStmnt</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Note</b>	The attributes <i>key</i> and <i>ref</i> , inherited from the class <code>att.canonical</code> may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;title&gt;Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18-21 July 1989&lt;/title&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;title&gt;Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition&lt;/title&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;title type="full"&gt; &lt;title type="main"&gt;Synthèse&lt;/title&gt; &lt;title type="sub"&gt;an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science&lt;/title&gt; &lt;/title&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre> element title {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.canonical.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.datafile.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,   attribute type { text }?,   attribute level { "a"   "m"   "j"   "s"   "u" }?,   tei_macro.paraContent } </pre>
--------------------	---

### Appendix A.1.51. <titleStmt>

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @xml:id</li> <li>– @n</li> <li>– @xml:lang</li> <li>– @xml:base</li> <li>– @xml:space</li> <li>– att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @corresp</li> <li>* @synch</li> <li>* @sameAs</li> <li>* @copyOf</li> <li>* @next</li> <li>* @prev</li> <li>* @exclude</li> <li>* @select</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @rend</li> <li>* @style</li> <li>* @rendition</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @cert</li> <li>* @resp</li> </ul> </li> <li>– att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @source</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Contained by	header: <a href="#">fileDesc</a>
May contain	core: <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">title</a>
Example	<pre> &lt;titleStmt&gt; &lt;title&gt;Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription&lt;/title&gt; &lt;respStmt&gt; &lt;resp&gt;compiled by&lt;/resp&gt; &lt;name&gt;P.J. Lucas&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt; &lt;/titleStmt&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence&gt; &lt;elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.respLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element titleStmt {   tei_att.global.attributes,   ( tei_title+, tei_model.respLike* ) } </pre>

## Appendix A.2. Model classes

### Appendix A.2.1. *model.addressLike*

<b>model.addressLike</b> groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.pPart.data</a>
Members	<a href="#">affiliation</a>

### Appendix A.2.2. *model.attributable*

<b>model.attributable</b> groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">macro.phraseSeq</a> <a href="#">model.inter</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.quoteLike</a>

### Appendix A.2.3. *model.availabilityPart*

<b>model.availabilityPart</b> groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">availability</a>
Members	<a href="#">licence</a>

### Appendix A.2.4. *model.biblLike*

<b>model.biblLike</b> groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">model.inter</a> <a href="#">model.personPart</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">taxonomy</a>
Members	<a href="#">bibl</a>

### Appendix A.2.5. *model.biblPart*

<b>model.biblPart</b> groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">bibl</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.imprintPart</a> [ <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> ] <a href="#">model.respLike</a> [ <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> ] <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a>

### Appendix A.2.6. *model.common*

<b>model.common</b> groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">body</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.cmc</a> <a href="#">model.divPart</a> [ <a href="#">model.lLike</a> <a href="#">model.pLike</a> [ <a href="#">p</a> ]] <a href="#">model.inter</a> [ <a href="#">model.attributable</a> [ <a href="#">model.quoteLike</a> ] <a href="#">model.biblLike</a> [ <a href="#">bibl</a> ] <a href="#">model.egLike</a> <a href="#">model.labelLike</a> [ <a href="#">desc</a> ] <a href="#">model.listLike</a> [ <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> ] <a href="#">model.oddDecl</a> <a href="#">model.stageLike</a> ]
Note	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.



### ***Appendix A.2.7. model.dateLike***

<b>model.dateLike</b> groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.pPart.data</a>
Members	<a href="#">date</a>

### ***Appendix A.2.8. model.descLike***

<b>model.descLike</b> groups elements which contain a description of their function.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">category</a> <a href="#">taxonomy</a>
Members	<a href="#">desc</a>

### ***Appendix A.2.9. model.divBottom***

<b>model.divBottom</b> groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">list</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.divBottomPart</a> <a href="#">model.divWrapper</a>

### ***Appendix A.2.10. model.divPart***

<b>model.divPart</b> groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">model.common</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.lLike</a> <a href="#">model.pLike[p]</a>
Note	Note that this element class does not include members of the <a href="#">model.inter</a> class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

### ***Appendix A.2.11. model.divTop***

<b>model.divTop</b> groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">list</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.divTopPart</a> [ <a href="#">model.headLike</a> ] <a href="#">model.divWrapper</a>

### ***Appendix A.2.12. model.divTopPart***

<b>model.divTopPart</b> groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.divTop</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.headLike</a>

### ***Appendix A.2.13. model.emphLike***

<b>model.emphLike</b> groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.highlighted</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a>
Members	<a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">title</a>

### ***Appendix A.2.14. model.encodingDescPart***

<b>model.encodingDescPart</b> groups elements which may be used inside <a href="#">&lt;encodingDesc&gt;</a> and appear multiple times.	
--	--

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">encodingDesc</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">classDecl</a>

#### ***Appendix A.2.15. model.eventLike***

<b>model.eventLike</b> groups elements which describe events.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">model.orgPart</a> <a href="#">model.personPart</a> <a href="#">place</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a>

#### ***Appendix A.2.16. model.global***

<b>model.global</b> groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq.limited</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">model.paraPart</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">text</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.global.edit</a> <a href="#">model.global.meta</a> <a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a> <a href="#">model.noteLike</a> [ <a href="#">note</a> ]

#### ***Appendix A.2.17. model.highlighted***

<b>model.highlighted</b> groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.emphLike</a> [ <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">title</a> ] <a href="#">model.hiLike</a>

#### ***Appendix A.2.18. model.imprintPart***

<b>model.imprintPart</b> groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.biblPart</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a>

#### ***Appendix A.2.19. model.inter***

<b>model.inter</b> groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">macro.limitedContent</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">model.common</a> <a href="#">model.paraPart</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.attributable</a> [ <a href="#">model.quoteLike</a> ] <a href="#">model.biblLike</a> [ <a href="#">bibl</a> ] <a href="#">model.egLike</a> <a href="#">model.labelLike</a> [ <a href="#">desc</a> ] <a href="#">model.listLike</a> [ <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> ] <a href="#">model.oddDecl</a> <a href="#">model.stageLike</a>

#### ***Appendix A.2.20. model.labelLike***

<b>model.labelLike</b> groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">model.inter</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">place</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">desc</a>

#### ***Appendix A.2.21. model.limitedPhrase***

<b>model.limitedPhrase</b> groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei

Used by	<a href="#">catDesc</a> <a href="#">macro.limitedContent</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq.limited</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.emphLike[term title]</a> <a href="#">model.hiLike</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.data[<a href="#">model.addressLike[affiliation]</a> <a href="#">model.dateLike[date]</a> <a href="#">model.measureLike</a> <a href="#">model.nameLike[<a href="#">model.nameLike.agent[name]</a> <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart[forename <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">model.placeStateLike[<a href="#">model.placeNamePart[country placeName]</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">idno]</a></a> <a href="#">model.pPart.editorial</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.msdesc</a> <a href="#">model.phrase.xml</a> <a href="#">model.ptrLike[ptr]</a></a></a></a>

### Appendix A.2.22. *model.listLike*

<b>model.listLike</b> groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists]	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">model.inter</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a>

### Appendix A.2.23. *model.nameLike*

<b>model.nameLike</b> groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">model.pPart.data</a> <a href="#">org</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.nameLike.agent[name]</a> <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart[forename <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">model.placeStateLike[<a href="#">model.placeNamePart[country placeName]</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">idno</a></a></a>
Note	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

### Appendix A.2.24. *model.nameLike.agent*

<b>model.nameLike.agent</b> groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a>
Members	<a href="#">name</a>
Note	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

### Appendix A.2.25. *model.noteLike*

<b>model.noteLike</b> groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">model.global</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">place</a>
Members	<a href="#">note</a>

### Appendix A.2.26. *model.orgPart*

<b>model.orgPart</b> groups elements which form part of the description of an organization.	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">org</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.eventLike[event <a href="#">listEvent</a>]</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a>

### Appendix A.2.27. *model.pLike*

<b>model.pLike</b> groups paragraph-like elements.	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">model.divPart</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">p</a>

### Appendix A.2.28. *model.pPart.data*

<b>model.pPart.data</b> groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.addressLike[affiliation]</a> <a href="#">model.dateLike[date]</a> <a href="#">model.measureLike</a> <a href="#">model.nameLike[<a href="#">model.nameLike.agent[name]</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart[<a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.placeStateLike[<a href="#">model.placeNamePart[country</a> <a href="#">placeName</a>]]</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">idno</a>

### Appendix A.2.29. *model.pPart.edit*

<b>model.pPart.edit</b> groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.pPart.editorial</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional</a>

### Appendix A.2.30. *model.paraPart*

<b>model.paraPart</b> groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements. [3.1. Paragraphs]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">macro.paraContent</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.gLike</a> <a href="#">model.global[<a href="#">model.global.edit</a> <a href="#">model.global.meta</a> <a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a> <a href="#">model.noteLike[note]</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.inter[<a href="#">model.attributable[<a href="#">model.quoteLike</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.biblLike[bibl]</a> <a href="#">model.egLike</a> <a href="#">model.labelLike[desc]</a> <a href="#">model.listLike[list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.oddDecl</a> <a href="#">model.stageLike</a> ] <a href="#">model.lLike</a> <a href="#">model.phrase[<a href="#">model.graphicLike</a> <a href="#">model.highlighted[<a href="#">model.emphLike[term</a> <a href="#">title</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.hiLike</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.lPart</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.data[<a href="#">model.addressLike[affiliation]</a> <a href="#">model.dateLike[date]</a> <a href="#">model.measureLike</a> <a href="#">model.nameLike[<a href="#">model.nameLike.agent[name]</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart[<a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.placeStateLike[<a href="#">model.placeNamePart[country</a> <a href="#">placeName</a>]]</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">idno</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.edit[<a href="#">model.pPart.editorial</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.msdesc</a> <a href="#">model.phrase.xml</a> <a href="#">model.ptrLike[ptr]</a> <a href="#">model.segLike</a> <a href="#">model.specDescLike</a>

### Appendix A.2.31. *model.persNamePart*

<b>model.persNamePart</b> groups elements which form part of a personal name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a>

### Appendix A.2.32. *model.persStateLike*

<b>model.persStateLike</b> groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.personPart</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">affiliation</a>
<b>Note</b>	These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

### Appendix A.2.33. *model.personLike*

<b>model.personLike</b> groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a>

Members	<a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">person</a>
---------	--

#### **Appendix A.2.34. *model.personPart***

<b>model.personPart</b> groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [16.2.2. The Participant Description]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">person</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.biblLike[bibl]</a> <a href="#">model.eventLike[event listEvent]</a> <a href="#">model.persStateLike[affiliation]</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">name</a>

#### **Appendix A.2.35. *model.phrase***

<b>model.phrase</b> groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">model.paraPart</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.graphicLike</a> <a href="#">model.highlighted[model.emphLike[term title]</a> <a href="#">model.hiLike]</a> <a href="#">model.l-Part</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[affiliation]</a> <a href="#">model.dateLike[date]</a> <a href="#">model.measureLike</a> <a href="#">model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name]</a> <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname]</a> <a href="#">model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName]]</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">idno]]</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional]</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.msdesc</a> <a href="#">model.phrase.xml</a> <a href="#">model.ptrLike[ptr]</a> <a href="#">model.segLike</a> <a href="#">model.specDescLike</a>
Note	This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

#### **Appendix A.2.36. *model.placeLike***

<b>model.placeLike</b> groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">place</a>

#### **Appendix A.2.37. *model.placeNamePart***

<b>model.placeNamePart</b> groups elements which form part of a place name. [14.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.placeStateLike</a>
Members	<a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">placeName</a>

#### **Appendix A.2.38. *model.placeStateLike***

<b>model.placeStateLike</b> groups elements which describe changing states of a place.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a> <a href="#">place</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.placeNamePart[country placeName]</a>

#### **Appendix A.2.39. *model.profileDescPart***

<b>model.profileDescPart</b> groups elements which may be used inside <a href="#">&lt;profileDesc&gt;</a> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">profileDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a>

#### **Appendix A.2.40. *model.ptrLike***

<b>model.ptrLike</b> groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a> <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a>

Members	<a href="#">ptr</a>
---------	---------------------

#### **Appendix A.2.41. *model.publicationStmtPart.agency***

<b>model.publicationStmtPart.agency</b> groups the child elements of a <a href="#">&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</a> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
Members	<a href="#">publisher</a>
Note	The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element. See also <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a> .

#### **Appendix A.2.42. *model.publicationStmtPart.detail***

<b>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</b> groups the agency-specific child elements of the <a href="#">&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</a> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.ptrLike[ptr]</a> <a href="#">availability date idno pubPlace</a>
Note	A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it. See also <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.agency</a> .

#### **Appendix A.2.43. *model.resource***

<b>model.resource</b> groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">TEI</a>
Members	<a href="#">text</a>

#### **Appendix A.2.44. *model.respLike***

<b>model.respLike</b> groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.biblPart titleStmt</a>
Members	<a href="#">editor respStmt</a>

#### **Appendix A.2.45. *model.teiHeaderPart***

<b>model.teiHeaderPart</b> groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">teiHeader</a>
Members	<a href="#">encodingDesc profileDesc</a>

### **Appendix A.3. Attribute classes**

#### **Appendix A.3.1. *att.anchoring***

<b>att.anchoring</b> (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.	
Module	tei
Members	<a href="#">note</a>
Attributes	<a href="#">anchored</a> (anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

	<p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.truthValue</u></p> <p><b>Default</b> true</p> <p><b>Note</b> In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. ‘page 218, lines 3–4’). The <i>anchored</i> attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the <i>n</i> attribute.</p>
	<p><b>targetEnd</b> (target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the <i>range</i> function of XPointer, as further described in 17.2.4.6. <i>range()</i>.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;p&gt;(…) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuor temporibus&lt;anchor xml:id="A55234"/&gt; totaliter expeditui...&lt;/p&gt; &lt;!-- elsewhere in the document --&gt; &lt;noteGrp targetEnd="#A55234"&gt;   &lt;note xml:lang="en"&gt; Quatuor Tempora, so called dry fast days.   &lt;/note&gt;   &lt;note xml:lang="pl"&gt; Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne.   &lt;/note&gt; &lt;/noteGrp&gt;</pre>

### Appendix A.3.2. att.cReferencing

att.cReferencing provides attributes that may be used to supply a <i>canonical reference</i> as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>ptr term</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>cRef</b> (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a &lt;refsDecl&gt; element in the TEI header.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.text</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> The value of <i>cRef</i> should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 17.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.</p> <p>The &lt;refsDecl&gt; to use may be indicated with the <i>decls</i> attribute.</p> <p>Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given &lt;ptr&gt; element.</p>

### Appendix A.3.3. att.calendarSystem

att.calendarSystem provides attributes for indicating calendar systems to which a date belongs. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
<b>Module</b>	tei

<b>Members</b>	<u>date</u>	
<b>Attributes</b>	calendar	<p>indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Schematron</b> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="string-length( normalize-space(.) ) gt 0"&gt; @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this &lt;sch:name/&gt; element has no textual content.&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</p> <pre>He was born on &lt;date calendar="#gregorian"&gt;Feb. 22, 1732&lt;/date&gt; (&lt;date when="1732-02-22"&gt;Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.&lt;/date&gt;).</pre> <pre>He was born on &lt;date calendar="#gregorian #julian" when="1732-02-22"&gt;Feb. 22, 1732 (Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.)&lt;/date&gt;.</pre> <p><b>Note</b> Note that the <i>calendar</i> attribute declares the calendar system used to interpret the textual content of an element, as it appears on an original source. It does <i>not</i> modify the interpretation of the normalization attributes provided by <i>att.dataable.w3c</i>, <i>att.dataable.iso</i>, or <i>att.dataable.custom</i>. Attributes from those first two classes are always interpreted as Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian dates, as per the respective standards on which they are based. The calendar system used to interpret the last (<i>att.dataable.custom</i>) may be specified with <i>datingMethod</i>.</p>

#### Appendix A.3.4. *att.canonical*

<b>att.canonical</b> provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]		
<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<u>att.naming</u> [ <u>att.personal</u> [ <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>name</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> ] <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>editor</u> <u>event</u> <u>pubPlace</u> ] <u>bibl</u> <u>catDesc</u> <u>date</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmnt</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u>	
<b>Attributes</b>	key	<p>provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.text</u></p> <pre>&lt;author&gt;   &lt;name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"     ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608"&gt;Victor Hugo&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/author&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the <i>key</i> attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project.</p>
	ref	<p>(reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> <pre>&lt;name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"   type="person"&gt;Seamus Heaney&lt;/name&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the</p>



	implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.
<b>Example</b>	<p>In this contrived example, a canonical reference to the same organisation is provided in four different ways.</p> <pre> &lt;author n="1"&gt;   &lt;name ref="http://nzetc.victoria.ac.nz/tm/scholarly/name-427308.html"     type="organisation"&gt;New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/author&gt;  &lt;author n="2"&gt;   &lt;name ref="nzvn:427308"     type="organisation"&gt;New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/author&gt;  &lt;author n="3"&gt;   &lt;name ref="./named_entities.xml#o427308"     type="organisation"&gt;New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/author&gt;  &lt;author n="4"&gt;   &lt;name key="name-427308"     type="organisation"&gt;New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/author&gt; </pre> <p>The first presumes the availability of an internet connection and a processor that can resolve a URI (most can). The second requires, in addition, a <code>&lt;prefixDef&gt;</code> that declares how the <code>nzvn</code> prefix should be interpreted. The third does not require an internet connection, but does require that a file named <code>named_entities.xml</code> be in the same directory as the TEI document. The fourth requires that an entire external system for key resolution be available.</p>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The <i>key</i> attribute is more flexible and general-purpose, but its use in interchange requires that documentation about how the key is to be resolved be sent to the recipient of the TEI document. In contrast values of the <i>ref</i> attribute are resolved using the widely accepted protocols for a URI, and thus less documentation, if any, is likely required by the recipient in data interchange.</p> <p>These guidelines provide no semantic basis or suggested precedence when both <i>key</i> and <i>ref</i> are provided. For this reason simultaneous use of both is not recommended unless documentation explaining the use is provided, probably in an ODD customisation, for interchange.</p>

### Appendix A.3.5. att.cmc

<b>att.cmc</b> (computer-mediated communication) provides attributes categorizing how the element content was created in a CMC environment.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">title</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>generatedBy</b> (generated by) categorizes how the content of an element was generated in a CMC environment.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Schematron</b> <code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@generatedBy]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="ancestor-or-self::tei:post"&gt;The @generatedBy attribute is for use within a &lt;post&gt; element.&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code></p> <p><b>Suggested values include:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>human</b> the content was ‘naturally’ typed or spoken by a human user</li> <li><b>template</b> the content was generated after a human user activated a template for its insertion</li> <li><b>system</b> the content was generated by the system, i.e. the CMC environment</li> </ul>

	<p><b>bot</b> the content was generated by a bot, i.e. a non-human agent, typically one that is not part of the CMC environment itself</p> <p><b>un-</b> <b>specified</b> the content was generated by an unknown or unspecified process</p> <p><b>un-</b> <b>specified</b></p> <p>automatic system message in chat: user moves on to another chatroom</p> <pre>&lt;post type="event" generatedBy="system" who="#system" rend="color:blue"&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;name type="nickname" corresp="#A02"&gt;McMike&lt;/name&gt; geht in einen anderen Raum: &lt;name type="roomname"&gt;Kreuzfahrt&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/post&gt;</pre> <p>automatic system message in chat: user enters a chatroom</p> <pre>&lt;post type="event" generatedBy="system"&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;name type="nickname" corresp="#A08"&gt;c_bo&lt;/name&gt; betritt den Raum. &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/post&gt;</pre> <p>automatic system message in chat: user changes his font color</p> <pre>&lt;post type="event" generatedBy="system" rend="color:red"&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;name type="nickname" corresp="#A08"&gt;c_bo&lt;/name&gt; hat die Farbe gewechselt. &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/post&gt;</pre> <p>An automatic signature of user including an automatic timestamp (Wikipedia discussion, anonymized). The specification of <i>generatedBy</i> at the inner element <i>&lt;signed&gt;</i> is meant to override the specification at the outer element <i>&lt;post&gt;</i>. This is generally possible when the outer <i>generatedBy</i> value is "human".</p> <pre>&lt;post type="standard" generatedBy="human" indentLevel="2" synch="#t00394407" who="#WU00005582"&gt; &lt;p&gt; Kurze Nachfrage: Die Hieros für den Goldnamen stammen auch von Beckerath gem. Literatur ? Grüße —&lt;/p&gt; &lt;signed generatedBy="template" rend="inline"&gt; &lt;gap reason="signatureContent"/&gt; &lt;time generatedBy="template"&gt;18:50, 22. Okt. 2008 (CEST)&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/signed&gt; &lt;/post&gt;</pre> <p>Wikipedia talk page: user signature</p> <pre>&lt;post type="written" generatedBy="human"&gt; &lt;!-- ... main content of posting ... --&gt; &lt;signed generatedBy="template"&gt; &lt;gap reason="signatureContent"/&gt; &lt;time generatedBy="template"&gt;12:01, 12. Jun. 2009 (CEST)&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/signed&gt; &lt;/post&gt;</pre>
--	--

### Appendix A.3.6. att.dateable

att.dateable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or dateable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>idno</u> <u>licence</u> <u>name</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>resp</u> <u>title</u>

Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.dataable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @when-custom</li> <li>– @notBefore-custom</li> <li>– @notAfter-custom</li> <li>– @from-custom</li> <li>– @to-custom</li> <li>– @datingPoint</li> <li>– @datingMethod</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.dataable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @when-iso</li> <li>– @notBefore-iso</li> <li>– @notAfter-iso</li> <li>– @from-iso</li> <li>– @to-iso</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @when</li> <li>– @notBefore</li> <li>– @notAfter</li> <li>– @from</li> <li>– @to</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>period supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically <code>&lt;category&gt;s</code>, <code>&lt;date&gt;s</code>, or <code>&lt;event&gt;s</code>) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>
Note	<p>This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the <code>att.dataable.w3c</code> class are provided. If the module for names &amp; dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the <code>att.dataable.iso</code> and <code>att.dataable.custom</code> classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.</p>

### Appendix A.3.7. att.dataable.custom

<b>att.dataable.custom</b> provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [14.4. Dates]	
Module	namesdates
Members	<a href="#">att.dataable</a> [ <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">title</a> ]
Attributes	<p>when-custom supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <code>teidata.word</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are <i>not</i> valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system</p> <pre>&lt;p&gt;Alhazen died in Cairo on the &lt;date when="1040-03-06"   when-custom="431-06-12"&gt; 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH &lt;/date&gt;.&lt;/p&gt;</pre>

		<pre> &lt;p&gt;The current world will end at the &lt;date when="2012-12-21"   when-custom="13.0.0.0"&gt;end of B'ak'tun 13&lt;/date&gt;.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;The Battle of Meggidu   (&lt;date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23"&gt;23rd year of reign of Thutmose III&lt;/date&gt;).&lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub &lt;date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11"&gt;die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/p&gt; </pre>	
		<p>Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents. The <i>when-custom</i> attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.</p>	
	notBefore-custom	<p>specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p>	
	notAfter-custom	<p>specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p>	
	from-custom	<p>indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p> <pre> &lt;event xml:id="FIRE1"   datingMethod="#julian"   from-custom="1666-09-02"   to-custom="1666-09-05"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;The Great Fire of London&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;p&gt;The Great Fire of London burned through a large part     of the city of London.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/event&gt; </pre>	
	to-custom	<p>indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p>	
	datingPoint	<p>supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p>	
	datingMethod	<p>supplies a pointer to a &lt;calendar&gt; element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p> <pre> Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increa#e, Moderne e#tate, and de#cription of that Citie, written in the yeare &lt;date when-custom="1598"   calendar="#julian"   datingMethod="#julian"&gt;1598&lt;/date&gt;. by Iohn Stow Citizen of London. </pre> <p>In this example, the <i>calendar</i> attribute points to a &lt;calendar&gt; element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the &lt;date&gt; element is a Julian date, and the <i>datingMethod</i> attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the <i>when-custom</i> attribute value is Julian too.</p> <pre> &lt;date when="1382-06-28"   when-custom="6890-06-20"   datingMethod="#creationOfWorld"&gt; u### ##### ### &lt;num&gt;#&lt;/num&gt; ##### &lt;/date&gt; </pre>	<p>&lt;num&gt;###&lt;/num&gt;</p>
		<p>In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured ‘from the creation of the world’, which is normalized (in <i>when</i>) to the Gregorian</p>	

	<p>date, but is also normalized (in <i>when-custom</i>) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Note that the <i>datingMethod</i> attribute (unlike <i>calendar</i> defined in <i>att.dataable</i>) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the <i>when-custom</i> or other <i>X-custom</i> attributes), <i>not</i> the calendar of the original date in the element.</p>
--	---

### Appendix A.3.8. *att.dataable.iso*

<b>att.dataable.iso</b> provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601:2004 standard. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.dataable</a> [ <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">title</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>when-iso</b> supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p> <p>The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date &amp; time formats that are <i>not</i> valid W3C format normalizations.</p> <pre>&lt;date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00"&gt;Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04"&gt;Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning&lt;/date&gt; &lt;time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05"&gt;4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05"&gt;4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm&lt;/time&gt; &lt;date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03"&gt;a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May&lt;/date&gt; &lt;time when-iso="03:00"&gt;3 A.M.&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when-iso="14"&gt;around two&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when-iso="15,5"&gt;half past three&lt;/time&gt;</pre> <p>All of the examples of the <i>when</i> attribute in the <i>att.dataable.w3c</i> class are also valid with respect to this attribute.</p> <pre>He likes to be punctual. I said &lt;q&gt; &lt;time when-iso="12"&gt;around noon&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/q&gt;, and he showed up at &lt;time when-iso="12:00:00"&gt;12 O'clock&lt;/time&gt; on the dot.</pre> <p>The second occurrence of <code>&lt;time&gt;</code> could have been encoded with the <i>when</i> attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification. The first occurrence could not.</p> <p><b>notBefore-iso</b> specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p> <p><b>notAfter-iso</b> specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p> <p><b>from-iso</b> indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p> <p><b>to-iso</b> indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p>
<b>Note</b>	The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601:2004, using the Gregorian calendar.

	<p>If both <i>when-iso</i> and <i>dur-iso</i> are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,</p> <pre>&lt;date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/&gt;</pre> <p>indicates the same time period as</p> <pre>&lt;date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/&gt;</pre> <p>In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.</p>
--	--

### Appendix A.3.9. att.dataable.w3c

<b>att.dataable.w3c</b> provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.dataable</a> [ <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">title</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>when</b> supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.w3c</a></p> <p>Examples of W3C date, time, and date &amp; time formats.</p> <pre>&lt;p&gt; &lt;date when="1945-10-24"&gt;24 Oct 45&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z"&gt;September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning&lt;/date&gt; &lt;time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00"&gt;Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when="14:12:38"&gt;fourteen twelve and 38 seconds&lt;/time&gt; &lt;date when="1962-10"&gt;October of 1962&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="-06-12"&gt;June 12th&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="-01"&gt;the first of the month&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="-08"&gt;August&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="2006"&gt;MMVI&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="0056"&gt;AD 56&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when="-0056"&gt;56 BC&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/p&gt;</pre> <pre>This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the &lt;date calendar="#julian" when="1632-06-06"&gt;27th of May (old style)&lt;/date&gt;.</pre> <pre>&lt;opener&gt; &lt;dateline&gt; &lt;placeName&gt;Dorchester, Village,&lt;/placeName&gt; &lt;date when="1828-03-02"&gt;March 2d. 1828.&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/dateline&gt; &lt;salute&gt;To Mrs. Cornell,&lt;/salute&gt; Sunday &lt;time when="12:00:00"&gt;noon.&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/opener&gt;</pre> <p><b>notBefore</b> specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.w3c</a></p> <p><b>notAfter</b> specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.w3c</a></p> <p><b>from</b> indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.w3c</a></p> <p><b>to</b> indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p>

	<b>Datatype</b> <code>teidata.temporal.w3c</code>
<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="@notBefore @notAfter @from @to" role="nonfatal"&gt;The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal"&gt;The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal"&gt;The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01"&gt;28 May through 1 June 1863&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date &amp; time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.</p> <p>The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is <code>yyyy-mm-dd</code>, but <code>yyyy, - -mm, - -dd, yyyy-mm</code>, or <code>- -mm-dd</code> may also be used. For the time part, the form <code>hh:mm:ss</code> is used.</p> <p>Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.</p>

### Appendix A.3.10. *att.datcat*

<b>att.datcat</b> provides attributes that are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by an external taxonomy, in this way establishing the identity of information containers and values, and providing means of interpreting them. [10.5.2. Lexical View 19.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]							
<b>Module</b>	<code>tei</code>						
<b>Members</b>	<code>category taxonomy</code>						
<b>Attributes</b>	<table> <tr> <td><code>datcat</code></td><td> <p>provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If <i>valueDatcat</i> is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while <i>valueDatcat</i> performs role (b).</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td><code>valueDatcat</code></td><td> <p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with <i>datcat</i> is needed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td><code>targetDatcat</code></td><td> <p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the <i>datcat</i> attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p> </td></tr> </table>	<code>datcat</code>	<p>provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If <i>valueDatcat</i> is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while <i>valueDatcat</i> performs role (b).</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>	<code>valueDatcat</code>	<p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with <i>datcat</i> is needed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>	<code>targetDatcat</code>	<p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the <i>datcat</i> attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>
<code>datcat</code>	<p>provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If <i>valueDatcat</i> is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while <i>valueDatcat</i> performs role (b).</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>						
<code>valueDatcat</code>	<p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with <i>datcat</i> is needed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>						
<code>targetDatcat</code>	<p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the <i>datcat</i> attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>						
<b>Example</b>	The example below presents the TEI encoding of the name-value pair <code>&lt;part of speech, common noun&gt;</code> , where the name (key) 'part of speech' is abbreviated as 'POS', and the value, 'common noun' is symbolized by 'NN'. The entire name-value pair is encoded by means of the element <code>&lt;f&gt;</code> . In TEI XML, that element acts as the container, la-						

	<p>beled with the <i>name</i> attribute. Its contents may be complex or simple. In the case at hand, the content is the symbol 'NN'. The <i>datcat</i> attribute relates the feature <i>name</i> (i.e., the key) to the data category 'part of speech', while the attribute <i>valueDatcat</i> relates the feature <i>value</i> to the data category <i>common noun</i>. Both these data categories should be defined in an external and preferably open reference taxonomy or ontology.</p> <pre>&lt;fs&gt;   &lt;f name="POS"     datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"&gt;     &lt;symbol valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545"       value="NN"/&gt;     &lt;/f&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/fs&gt;</pre> <p>'NN' is the symbol for common noun used e.g. in the CLAWS-7 tagset defined by the University Centre for Computer Corpus Research on Language at the University of Lancaster. The very same data category used for tagging an early version of the British National Corpus, and coming from the BNC Basic (C5) tagset, uses the symbol 'NN0' (rather than 'NN'). Making these values semantically interoperable would be extremely difficult without a human expert if they were not anchored in a single point of an established reference taxonomy of morphosyntactic data categories. In the case at hand, the string 'http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545' is both a persistent identifier of the data category in question, as well as a pointer to a shared definition of <i>common noun</i>. While the symbols 'NN', 'NN0', and many others (often coming from languages other than English) are implicitly members of the container category 'part of speech', it is sometimes useful not to rely on such an implicit relationship but rather use an explicit identifier for that data category, to distinguish it from other morphosyntactic data categories, such as gender, tense, etc. For that purpose, the above example uses the <i>datcat</i> attribute to reference a definition of <i>part of speech</i>. The reference taxonomy in this example is the CLARIN Concept Registry. If the feature structure markup exemplified above is to be repeated many times in a single document, it is much more efficient to gather the persistent identifiers in a single place and to only reference them, implicitly or directly, from feature structure markup. The following example is much more concise than the one above and relies on the concepts of feature structure declaration and feature value library, discussed in chapter .</p> <pre>&lt;fs&gt;   &lt;f name="POS" fVal="#commonNoun"/&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/fs&gt;</pre> <p>The assumption here is that the relevant feature values are collected in a place that the annotation document in question has access to — preferably, a single document per linguistic resource, for example an <code>&lt;fsdDecl&gt;</code> that is XIncluded as a sibling of <code>&lt;text&gt;</code> or a child of <code>&lt;encodingDesc&gt;</code>; a <code>&lt;taxonomy&gt;</code> available resource-wide (e.g., in a shared header) is also an option. The example below presents an <code>&lt;fvLib&gt;</code> element that collects the relevant feature values (most of them omitted). At the same time, this example shows one way of encoding a <i>tagset</i>, i.e., an established inventory of values of (in the case at hand) morphosyntactic categories.</p> <pre>&lt;fvLib n="POS values"&gt;   &lt;symbol xml:id="commonNoun" value="NN"     datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"/&gt;   &lt;symbol xml:id="properNoun" value="NP"     datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-88ee16b944ae"/&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/fvLib&gt;</pre> <p>Note that these Guidelines do not prescribe a specific choice between <i>datcat</i> and <i>valueDatcat</i> in such cases. The former is the generic way of referencing a data category, whereas the latter is more specific, in that it references a data category that represents a value. The choice between them comes into play where a single element — or a tight element complex, such as the <code>&lt;f&gt;/&lt;symbol&gt;</code> complex illustrated above — make it necessary or useful to distinguish between the container data category and its value.</p>
<p><b>Example</b></p>	<p>In the context of dictionaries designed with semantic interoperability in mind, the following example ensures that the <code>&lt;pos&gt;</code> element is interpreted as the same information container as in the case of the example of <code>&lt;f name="POS"&gt;</code> above.</p> <pre>&lt;gramGrp&gt;   &lt;pos datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"     valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545"&gt;NN&lt;/pos&gt;</pre>



	<div> <pre>&lt;/gramGrp&gt;</pre> </div> <div> <p>Efficiency of this type of interoperable markup demands that the references to the particular data categories should best be provided in a single place within the dictionary (or a single place within the project), rather than being repeated inside every entry. For the container elements, this can be achieved at the level of <code>&lt;tagUsage&gt;</code>, although here, the <i>valueDatcat</i> attribute should be used, because it is not the <code>&lt;tagUsage&gt;</code> element that is associated with the relevant data category, but rather the element <code>&lt;pos&gt;</code> (or <code>&lt;case&gt;</code>, etc.) that is described by <code>&lt;tagUsage&gt;</code>:</p> </div> <div> <pre>&lt;tagsDecl partial="true"&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt;   &lt;namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"&gt;     &lt;tagUsage qi="pos"       targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"       targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1840_9f4e319c-f233-6c90-9117-7270e215f039"     &lt;/tagUsage&gt;   &lt;/namespace&gt; &lt;/tagsDecl&gt;</pre> </div> <div> <p>Another possibility is to shorten the URIs by means of the <code>&lt;prefixDef&gt;</code> mechanism, as illustrated below:</p> </div> <div> <pre>&lt;listPrefixDef&gt;   &lt;prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern="pos"     replacementPattern="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"/&gt;   &lt;prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern="adj"     replacementPattern="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1230_23653c21-fca1-edf8-fd7c-3df2d6499157"/&gt; &lt;/listPrefixDef&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;entry&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt;   &lt;form&gt;     &lt;orth&gt;isotope&lt;/orth&gt;   &lt;/form&gt;   &lt;gramGrp&gt;     &lt;pos datcat="ccr:pos"       valueDatcat="ccr:adj"&gt;adj&lt;/pos&gt;   &lt;/gramGrp&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/entry&gt;</pre> </div> <div> <p>This mechanism creates implications that are not always wanted, among others, in the case at hand, suggesting that the identifiers ‘pos’ and ‘adj’ belong to a namespace associated with the CLARIN Concept Repository (CCR), whereas that is solely a shorthand mechanism whose scope is the current resource. Documenting this clearly in the header of the dictionary is therefore advised. Yet another possibility is to associate the information about the relationship between a TEI markup element and the data category that it is intended to model already at the level of modeling the dictionary resource, that is, at the level of the ODD, in the <code>&lt;equiv&gt;</code> element that is a child of <code>&lt;elementSpec&gt;</code> or <code>&lt;attDef&gt;</code>.</p> </div>
<div> <h3>Example</h3> </div>	<div> <p>The <code>&lt;taxonomy&gt;</code> element is a handy tool for encoding taxonomies that are later referenced by <code>att.datcat</code> attributes, but it can also act as an intermediary device, for example holding a fragment of an external taxonomy (or ‘flattening’ an external ontology) that is relevant to the project or document at hand. (It is also imaginable that, for the purpose of the project at hand, the local <code>&lt;taxonomy&gt;</code> element combines vocabularies that originate from more than one external taxonomy or ontology.) In such cases, the <code>&lt;taxonomy&gt;</code> creates a local layer of indirection: the <code>att.datcat</code> attributes internal to the resource may reference the <code>&lt;category&gt;</code> elements stored in the header (as well as the <code>&lt;taxonomy&gt;</code> element itself), whereas these same <code>&lt;category&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;taxonomy&gt;</code> elements use <code>att.datcat</code> attributes to reference the original taxonomy or ontology.</p> </div> <div> <pre>&lt;encodingDesc&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt;   &lt;classDecl&gt;     &lt;!-- ... --&gt;     &lt;taxonomy xml:id="UD-SYN"       datcat="https://universaldependencies.org/u/dep/index.html"&gt;       &lt;desc&gt;         &lt;term&gt;UD syntactic relations&lt;/term&gt;       &lt;/desc&gt;       &lt;category xml:id="acl"         valueDatcat="https://universaldependencies.org/u/dep/acl.html"&gt;         &lt;catDesc&gt;           &lt;term&gt;acl&lt;/term&gt;: Clausal modifier of noun (adjectival clause)&lt;/catDesc&gt;         &lt;/category&gt;         &lt;category xml:id="acl_relcl"           valueDatcat="https://universaldependencies.org/u/dep/acl-relcl.html"&gt;</pre> </div>

	<pre> &lt;catDesc&gt;   &lt;term&gt;acl:relcl&lt;/term&gt;: relative clause modifier&lt;/catDesc&gt; &lt;/category&gt; &lt;category xml:id="advcl"   valueDatcat="https://universaldependencies.org/u/dep/advcl.html"&gt;   &lt;catDesc&gt;     &lt;term&gt;advcl&lt;/term&gt;: Adverbial clause modifier&lt;/catDesc&gt;   &lt;/category&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/taxonomy&gt; &lt;/classDecl&gt; &lt;/encodingDesc&gt; </pre> <p>The above fragment was excerpted from the GB subset of the ParlaMint project in April 2023, and enriched with <b>att.datcat</b> attributes for the purpose of illustrating the mechanism described here. Note that, in the ideal case, the values of <b>att.datcat</b> attributes should be persistent identifiers, and that the addressing scheme of Universal Dependencies is treated here as persistent for the sake of illustration. Note also that the contrast between <i>datcat</i> used on <u>&lt;taxonomy&gt;</u> on the one hand, and the <i>valueDatcat</i> used on <u>&lt;category&gt;</u> on the other, is not mandatory: both kinds of relations could be encoded by means of the generic <i>datcat</i> attribute, but using the former for the container and the latter for the content is more user-friendly.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The <i>targetDatcat</i> attribute is designed to be used in, e.g., feature structure declarations, and is analogous to the <i>targetLang</i> attribute of the <b>att.pointing</b> class, in that it describes the object that is being referenced, rather than the referencing object.</p> <pre> &lt;fDecl name="POS"   targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"&gt;   &lt;fDescr&gt;part of speech (morphosyntactic category)&lt;/fDescr&gt;   &lt;vRange&gt;     &lt;vAlt&gt;       &lt;symbol value="NN"         datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eece6861545"/&gt;       &lt;symbol value="NP"         datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-88ee16b944ae"/&gt;     &lt;!-- ... --&gt;   &lt;/vAlt&gt; &lt;/vRange&gt; &lt;/fDecl&gt; </pre> <p>Above, the <code>&lt;fDecl&gt;</code> uses <i>targetDatcat</i>, because if it were to use <i>datcat</i>, it would be asserting that it is an instance of the container data category <i>part of speech</i>, whereas it is not — it models a container (<code>&lt;f&gt;</code>) that encodes a part of speech. Note also that it is the <code>&lt;f&gt;</code> that is modeled above, not its values, which are used as direct references to data categories; hence the use of <i>datcat</i> in the <code>&lt;symbol&gt;</code> element.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The <b>att.datcat</b> attributes can be used for any sort of taxonomies. The example below illustrates their usefulness for describing usage domain labels in dictionaries on the example of the <i>Dicionário da Língua Portuguesa</i> by António de Moraes Silva, retro-digitised in the MORDigital project.</p> <pre> &lt;!-- in the dictionary header --&gt;&lt;encodingDesc&gt; &lt;classDecl&gt;   &lt;taxonomy xml:id="domains"&gt;     &lt;!-- ... --&gt;     &lt;category xml:id="domain.medical_and_health_sciences"&gt;       &lt;catDesc xml:lang="en"&gt;Medical and Health Sciences&lt;/catDesc&gt;       &lt;catDesc xml:lang="pt"&gt;Ciências Médicas e da Saúde&lt;/catDesc&gt;       &lt;category xml:id="domain.medical_and_health_sciences.medicine"         valueDatcat="https://vocabs.rossio.fcsh.unl.pt/pub/morais_domains/pt/page/0025"&gt;         &lt;catDesc xml:lang="en"&gt;           &lt;term&gt;Medicine&lt;/term&gt;           &lt;gloss&gt;             &lt;!-- ... --&gt;           &lt;/gloss&gt;         &lt;/catDesc&gt;         &lt;catDesc xml:lang="pt"&gt;           &lt;term&gt;Medicina&lt;/term&gt;           &lt;gloss&gt;             &lt;!-- ... --&gt;           &lt;/gloss&gt;         &lt;/catDesc&gt;       &lt;/category&gt;     &lt;/category&gt;   &lt;/taxonomy&gt; &lt;/classDecl&gt; &lt;/encodingDesc&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; </pre>

	<pre> inside an &lt;entry&gt; element: --&gt; &lt;usg type="domain" valueDatcat="#domain.medical_and_health_sciences.medicine"&gt;Med.&lt;/usg&gt; </pre> <p>In the Morais dictionary, the relevant domain labels are in the header, getting referenced inside the dictionary, from &lt;usg&gt; elements. The vocabulary used for dictionary-internal labelling is in turn anchored in the MorDigital controlled vocabulary service of the NOVA University of Lisbon – School of Social Sciences and Humanities (NOVA FCSH).</p>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The TEI Abstract Model can be expressed as a hierarchy of attribute-value matrices (AVMs) of various types and of various levels of complexity, nested or grouped in various ways. At the most abstract level, an AVM consists of an information container and the value (contents) of that container.</p> <p>A simple example of an XML serialization of such structures is, on the one hand, the opening and closing tags that delimit and name the container, and, on the other, the content enclosed by the two tags that constitutes the value. An analogous example is an attribute name and the value of that attribute.</p> <p>In a TEI XML example of two equivalent serializations expressing the name-value pair &lt;part-of-speech, common-noun&gt;, namely &lt;pos&gt;commonNoun&lt;/pos&gt; and pos="common-noun", one would classify the element &lt;pos&gt; and the attribute <i>pos</i> as containers (mapping onto the first member of the relevant name-value pair), while the character data content of &lt;pos&gt; or the value of <i>pos</i> would be seen as mapping onto the second member of the pair.</p> <p>The <b>att.datcat</b> class provides means of addressing the containers and their values, while at the same time providing a way to interpret them in the context of external taxonomies or ontologies. Aligning e.g. both the &lt;pos&gt; element and the <i>pos</i> attribute with the same value of an external reference point (i.e., an entry in an agreed taxonomy) affirms the identity of the concept serialised by both the element container and the attribute container, and optionally provides a definition of that concept (in the case at hand, the concept <i>part of speech</i>).</p> <p>The value of the <b>att.datcat</b> attributes should be a PID (persistent identifier) that points to a specific — and, ideally, shared — taxonomy or ontology. Among the resources that can, to a lesser or greater extent, be used as inventories of (more or less) standardized linguistic categories are the GOLD ontology, CLARIN CCR, OLiA, or TermWeb's DatCatInfo, and also the Universal Dependencies inventory, on the assumption that its URIs are going to persist. It is imaginable that a project may choose to address a local taxonomy store instead, but this risks losing the advantage of interchangeability with other projects.</p> <p>Historically, <i>datcat</i> and <i>valueDatcat</i> originate from the (now obsolete) ISO 12620:2009 standard, describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). The current version of that standard, ISO 12620-1, does not standardize the serialization of pointers, merely mentioning the TEI <b>att.datcat</b> as an example.</p> <p>Note that no constraint prevents the occurrence of a combination of <b>att.datcat</b> attributes: the &lt;fDecl&gt; element, which is a natural bearer of the <i>targetDatcat</i> attribute, is an instance of a specific modeling element, and, in principle, could be semantically fixed by an appropriate reference taxonomy of modeling devices.</p>

### Appendix A.3.11. att.declarable

<b>att.declarable</b> provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose <i>decls</i> attribute. [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>default</b> indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.truthValue</a></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>true</b>  <b>are:</b> This element is selected if its parent is selected</p> <p><b>false</b>  This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]</p>
<b>Note</b>	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a <i>default</i> attribute with a value of true.

### Appendix A.3.12. att.declaring

<b>att.declaring</b> provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>body</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>text</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>decls</b> (declarations) identifies one or more <i>declarable elements</i> within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>
<b>Note</b>	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

### Appendix A.3.13. att.dimensions

<b>att.dimensions</b> provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>date</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.ranging <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– @atLeast</li> <li>– @atMost</li> <li>– @min</li> <li>– @max</li> <li>– @confidence</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>unit</b> names the unit used for the measurement</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>cm</b> (centimetres)</p> <p><b>mm</b> (millimetres)</p> <p><b>in</b> (inches)</p> <p><b>line</b> lines of text</p> <p><b>char</b> (characters) characters of text</p> <p><b>quantity</b> specifies the length in the units specified</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.numeric</u></p> <p><b>extent</b> indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.text</u></p> <pre>&lt;gap extent="5 words"/&gt;</pre> <pre>&lt;height extent="half the page"/&gt;</pre>

	precision	characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.certainty</a>
	scope	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> <b>Sample values include:</b> <b>all</b> measurement applies to all instances. <b>most</b> measurement applies to most of the instances inspected. <b>range</b> measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

#### Appendix A.3.14. att.docStatus

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.		
Module	tei	
Members	<a href="#">bibl</a>	
Attributes	status	describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> <b>Sample values include:</b> <b>ap-proved</b> <b>can-di-date</b> <b>cleared</b> <b>dep-re-cat-ed</b> <b>draft</b> [Default] <b>em-bar-goed</b> <b>ex-pired</b> <b>frozen</b> <b>gal-ley</b> <b>pro-posed</b> <b>pub-lished</b>

	<p>rec- om- men- da- tion</p> <p>sub- mit- ted</p> <p>un- fin- ished</p> <p>with- drawn</p>
Example	<pre>&lt;revisionDesc status="published"&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-10-21"     status="published"/&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-08-02"     status="embargoed"/&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"     who="#MSM"/&gt;   &lt;change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"     who="#LB"/&gt; &lt;/revisionDesc&gt;</pre>

### Appendix A.3.15. *att.editLike*

<b>att.editLike</b> provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.1. Origination 14.3.2. The Person Element 12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]	
Module	tei
Members	<a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a>
Attributes	<p>evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Suggested values include:</b></p> <p><b>in-</b> there is internal evidence to support the intervention.</p> <p><b>ex-</b> there is external evidence to support the intervention.</p> <p><b>con-</b> the intervention or interpretation has been made <b>ture</b> by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.</p> <p>instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.xTruthValue</a></p> <p><b>Default</b> false</p>
Note	<p>The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.</p> <p>Each pointer on the <i>source</i> (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <a href="#">witness</a>, <a href="#">msDesc</a>, or <a href="#">bibl</a> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.</p>

### Appendix A.3.16. *att.fragmentable*

<b>att.fragmentable</b> provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	p
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>part specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>Y</b></p> <p><b>are:</b> (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect</p> <p><b>N</b> (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default]</p> <p><b>I</b> (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element</p> <p><b>M</b> (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element</p> <p><b>F</b> (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element</p> <p><b>Note</b> The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.</p>

### Appendix A.3.17. *att.global*

<b>att.global</b> provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">catDesc</a> <a href="#">category</a> <a href="#">classDecl</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">profileDesc</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">sur-name</a> <a href="#">taxonomy</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@corresp</li> <li>@synch</li> <li>@sameAs</li> <li>@copyOf</li> <li>@next</li> <li>@prev</li> <li>@exclude</li> <li>@select</li> </ul> </li> <li>att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@rend</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- @style
- @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
  - @cert
  - @resp
- att.global.source
  - @source

**xml:id** (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** ID

**Note** The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.

**n** (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [teidata.text](#)

**Note** The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

**xml:lang** (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [teidata.language](#)

```
<p> ... The consequences of
this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief
(Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
ancestral territorial organization.</p>
```

**Note** The *xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the [<teiHeader>](#) from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of *xml:lang*.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <https://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php>.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though



	these must remain consistent with their IETF Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.
xml:base	<p>provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p> <pre>&lt;div type="bibl"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;Selections from &lt;title level="m"&gt;The Collected Letters of Robert Southey. Part 1: 17   &lt;/head&gt;   &lt;listBibl xml:base="https://romantic-circles.org/sites/default/files/imported/editions/sou   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;ref target="letterEEEd.26.3.xml"&gt;       &lt;title&gt;Robert Southey to Grosvenor Charles Bedford&lt;/title&gt;, &lt;date when="1792-04-03"&gt;3 A     &lt;/ref&gt;   &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;ref target="letterEEEd.26.57.xml"&gt;       &lt;title&gt;Robert Southey to Anna Seward&lt;/title&gt;, &lt;date when="1793-09-18"&gt;18 September 1793     &lt;/ref&gt;   &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;ref target="letterEEEd.26.85.xml"&gt;       &lt;title&gt;Robert Southey to Robert Lovell&lt;/title&gt;, &lt;date from="1794-04-05"         to="1794-04-06"&gt;5-6 April, 1794&lt;/date&gt;.     &lt;/ref&gt;   &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/listBibl&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre>
xml:space	<p>signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values de-are:</b> <b>faults</b> signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable</p> <p><b>pre-serv</b> indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space</p> <p><b>Note</b> The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.</p>

### Appendix A.3.18. att.global.linking

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [17. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]	
<b>Module</b>	linking
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global</a> <a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">catDesc</a> <a href="#">category</a> <a href="#">classDecl</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">profileDesc</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">taxonomy</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>corresp</b> (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <pre>&lt;group&gt;   &lt;text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"     xml:lang="mi"&gt;     &lt;body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1"&gt;       &lt;div type="chapter"&gt;         &lt;head&gt;He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.&lt;/head&gt;         &lt;p&gt;...&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/div&gt;     &lt;/body&gt;   &lt;/text&gt;</pre>

```

<text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
  xml:lang="en">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
    corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
    <div type="chapter">
      <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
      <p>...</p>
    </div>
  </body>
</text>
</group>

```

In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *corresp*. The language is indicated using *xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```

<!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --><place xml:id="LOND1"
  corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">
  <placeName>London</placeName>
  <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
  corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">
  <persName type="lit">London</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Allegorical character representing the city of <placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1">London
  </p>
  </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
  corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
  <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an
      allegorical character in mayoral shows.
    </p>
  </note>
</person>

```

In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

synchron	<p>(synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>
sameAs	<p>points to an element that is the same as the current element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p>
copyOf	<p>points to an element of which the current element is a copy.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.</p>
next	<p>points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.</p>

	prev	(previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> <b>Note</b> It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.
	exclude	points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space
	select	selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space <b>Note</b> This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

### Appendix A.3.19. att.global.rendition

<b>att.global.rendition</b> provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]		
<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	att.global[ <a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">catDesc</a> <a href="#">category</a> <a href="#">classDecl</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">profileDesc</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">taxonomy</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> ]	
<b>Attributes</b>	rend	(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace <pre>&lt;head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)"&gt; &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle, &lt;lb/&gt;On Her &lt;lb/&gt; &lt;hi rend="case(mixed)"&gt;New Blazing-World&lt;/hi&gt;. &lt;/head&gt;</pre> <b>Note</b> These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the <i>rend</i> attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the <i>rend</i> attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.
	style	contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a> <pre>&lt;head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps"&gt; &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle, &lt;lb/&gt;On Her</pre>

		<pre>&lt;lb/&gt; &lt;hi style="font-variant: normal"&gt;New Blazing-World&lt;/hi&gt;. &lt;/head&gt;</pre>
	<b>Note</b>	<p>Unlike the attribute values of <i>rend</i>, which uses whitespace as a separator, the <i>style</i> attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.</p> <p>The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the <code>&lt;styleDefDecl&gt;</code> element in the TEI header.</p> <p>If <i>style</i> and <i>rendition</i> are both present on an element, then <i>style</i> overrides or complements <i>rendition</i>. <i>style</i> should not be used in conjunction with <i>rend</i>, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.</p>
	rendition	<p>points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by whitespace</p> <pre>&lt;head rendition="#ac #sc"&gt; &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle, &lt;lb/&gt;On Her &lt;lb/&gt; &lt;hi rendition="#normal"&gt;New Blazing-World&lt;/hi&gt;. &lt;/head&gt; &lt;!-- elsewhere... --&gt; &lt;rendition xml:id="sc" scheme="css"&gt;font-variant: small-caps&lt;/rendition&gt; &lt;rendition xml:id="normal" scheme="css"&gt;font-variant: normal&lt;/rendition&gt; &lt;rendition xml:id="ac" scheme="css"&gt;text-align: center&lt;/rendition&gt;</pre>
	<b>Note</b>	<p>The <i>rendition</i> attribute is used in a very similar way to the <i>class</i> attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.</p> <p>If <i>rendition</i> is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with <i>rend</i>. Where both <i>rendition</i> and <i>rend</i> are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.</p> <p>Each URI provided should indicate a <code>&lt;rendition&gt;</code> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the <i>scheme</i> attribute.</p>

### Appendix A.3.20. att.global.responsibility

<b>att.global.responsibility</b> provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 12.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 18.3. Spans and Interpretations 14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]		
<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global</a> [ <a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">catDesc</a> <a href="#">category</a> <a href="#">classDecl</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">profileDesc</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">taxonomy</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> ]	
<b>Attributes</b>	cert	<p>(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <code>teidata.probCert</code></p>
	resp	<p>(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.</p>

	<p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> To reduce the ambiguity of a <i>resp</i> pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that <i>resp</i> be used to point not to an agent (<a href="#">&lt;person&gt;</a> or <a href="#">&lt;org&gt;</a>) but to a <a href="#">&lt;respStmt&gt;</a>, <a href="#">&lt;author&gt;</a>, <a href="#">&lt;editor&gt;</a> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <a href="#">&lt;respStmt&gt;</a>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>Blessed are the &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;sic&gt;cheesemakers&lt;/sic&gt;   &lt;corr resp="#editor" cert="high"&gt;peacemakers&lt;/corr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt;; for they shall be called the children of God.</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;!-- in the &lt;text&gt; ... --&gt;&lt;lg&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;l&gt;Punkes, Panders, ba#e extortionizing   sla&lt;choice&gt;     &lt;sic&gt;n&lt;/sic&gt;     &lt;corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber"&gt;u&lt;/corr&gt;   &lt;/choice&gt;es,&lt;/l&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/lg&gt; &lt;!-- in the &lt;teiHeader&gt; ... --&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber"&gt;   &lt;resp when="2014"&gt;Transcriber&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;Janelle Jenstad&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt;</pre>

### Appendix A.3.21. *att.global.source*

<b>att.global.source</b> provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global</a> [ <a href="#">TEI affiliation</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">catDesc</a> <a href="#">category</a> <a href="#">classDecl</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">particDesc</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">profileDesc</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">settingDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">taxonomy</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>source</b> specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Schematron</b> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]"&gt; &lt;sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source),' ')" /&gt; &lt;sch:report test="( self::tei:classRef   self::tei:dataRef   self::tei:elementRef   self::tei:macroRef   self::tei:moduleRef   self::tei:schemaSpec ) and \$srcs[2]"&gt; When used on a schema description element (like &lt;sch:value-of select="name(.)"/&gt;), the @source attribute should have only 1 value. (This one has &lt;sch:value-of select="count(\$srcs)"/&gt;.) &lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</p> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>source</i> attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (&lt;classRef&gt;, &lt;dataRef&gt;, &lt;elementRef&gt;, &lt;macroRef&gt;, &lt;moduleRef&gt;, or &lt;schemaSpec&gt;), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained. On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.</p>

	<p>In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form <code>tei:x.y.z</code>, where <code>x.y.z</code> indicates the version number, e.g. <code>tei:4.3.2</code> for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) <code>tei:current</code> for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <code>&lt;prefixDef&gt;</code>.</p> <p>When used on elements describing schema components, <i>source</i> should have only one value; when used on other elements multiple values are permitted.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; As Willard McCarty (&lt;bibl xml:id="mcc_2012"&gt;2012, p.2&lt;/bibl&gt;) tells us, &lt;quote source="#mcc_2012"&gt;     term.&lt;/quote&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/p&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;quote source="#chicago_15_ed"&gt;Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the     less we seem to know.&lt;/quote&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed"&gt;   &lt;title level="m"&gt;The Chicago Manual of Style&lt;/title&gt;,   &lt;edition&gt;15th edition&lt;/edition&gt;. &lt;pubPlace&gt;Chicago&lt;/pubPlace&gt;: &lt;publisher&gt;University of     Chicago Press&lt;/publisher&gt; (&lt;date&gt;2003&lt;/date&gt;), &lt;biblScope unit="page"&gt;p.147&lt;/biblScope&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/&gt;</pre> <p>Include in the schema an element named <code>&lt;p&gt;</code> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;schemaSpec ident="myODD"   source="mycompiledODD.xml"&gt;   &lt;!-- further declarations specifying the components required --&gt; &lt;/schemaSpec&gt;</pre> <p>Create a schema using components taken from the file <code>mycompiledODD.xml</code>.</p>

### Appendix A.3.22. *att.internetMedia*

<b>att.internetMedia</b> provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>ptr</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>mimeType</b> (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>In this example <i>mimeType</i> is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.</p> <pre>&lt;ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"   target="https://raw.githubusercontent.com/TEIC/TEI/dev/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The <i>mimeType</i> attribute must have a value taken from this list.</p>

### Appendix A.3.23. *att.locatable*

<b>att.locatable</b> provides attributes for referencing locations by pointing to entries in a canonical list of places. [2.3.9. The Unit Declaration 14.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>event</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>where</b> indicates one or more locations by pointing to a <code>&lt;place&gt;</code> element or other canonical description.</p>

	<b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace
--	---

### Appendix A.3.24. *att.naming*

<b>att.naming</b> provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.6.1. Referring Strings 14.3.7. Names and Nyms]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>att.personal</u> [ <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>name</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> ] <u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>editor</u> <u>event</u> <u>pubPlace</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@key</li> <li>@ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <div> <div>role</div> <div> may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace </div> </div> <div> <div>nymRef</div> <div> (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (<i>nym</i>) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace    <b>Note</b> The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names. </div> </div>

### Appendix A.3.25. *att.personal*

<b>att.personal</b> (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>name</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@role</li> <li>@nymRef</li> </ul> </li> <li>att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* @key</li> <li>* @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <div> <div>full</div> <div> indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u>    <b>Legal values</b> yes  <b>are:</b> (yes) the name component is spelled out in full.[Default] </div> </div>

		<b>abb</b> (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.  <b>init</b> (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.
	sort	(sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.  <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.count</u>

### Appendix A.3.26. *att.placement*

<b>att.placement</b> provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]		
<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<u>note</u>	
<b>Attributes</b>	place	specifies where this item is placed.  <b>Status</b> Recommended  <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace  <b>Suggested values include:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>top</b> at the top of the page</li> <li><b>bottom</b> at the foot of the page</li> <li><b>margin</b> in the margin (left, right, or both)</li> <li><b>opposite</b> on the opposite, i.e. facing, page</li> <li><b>overleaf</b> on the other side of the leaf</li> <li><b>above</b> above the line</li> <li><b>right</b> to the right, e.g. to the right of a vertical line of text, or to the right of a figure</li> <li><b>below</b> below the line</li> <li><b>left</b> to the left, e.g. to the left of a vertical line of text, or to the left of a figure</li> <li><b>end</b> at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.</li> <li><b>in-line</b> within the body of the text.</li> <li><b>in-space</b> in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.</li> </ul> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>&lt;add place="margin"&gt;[An addition written in the margin]&lt;/add&gt; &lt;add place="bottom opposite"&gt;[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]&lt;/add&gt;</pre> </div>



### Appendix A.3.27. att.pointing

**att.pointing** provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module	tei	
Members	<a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">term</a>	
Attributes	targetLang	<p>specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by <i>target</i>, using a 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.language</a></p> <p><b>Schematron</b> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="@target"&gt;@targetLang should only be used on &lt;sch:name/&gt; if @target is specified.&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</p> <pre>&lt;linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp"&gt;   &lt;ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"     target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"     type="tuv"     targetLang="pl"/&gt;   &lt;ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"     target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"     type="tuv"     targetLang="sw"/&gt; &lt;/linkGrp&gt;</pre> <p>In the example above, the &lt;linkGrp&gt; combines pointers at parallel fragments of the <i>Universal Declaration of Human Rights</i>: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a &lt;language&gt; element with a matching value for its <i>ident</i> attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.</p>
	target	<p>specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium.</p>
	evaluate	<p>(evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values all are:</b></p> <p>if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.</p> <p><b>one</b></p>

	<p>if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.</p> <p><b>none</b></p> <p>no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.</p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.</p>
--	--

### Appendix A.3.28. att.ranging

<b>att.ranging</b> provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.											
<b>Module</b>	tei										
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.dimensions[date]</a>										
<b>Attributes</b>	<table> <tr> <td>atLeast</td><td> <p>gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>atMost</td><td> <p>gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>min</td><td> <p>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>max</td><td> <p>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>confidence</td><td> <p>specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i>, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.probability</a></p> </td></tr> </table>	atLeast	<p>gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p>	atMost	<p>gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p>	min	<p>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p>	max	<p>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p>	confidence	<p>specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i>, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.probability</a></p>
atLeast	<p>gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p>										
atMost	<p>gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p>										
min	<p>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p>										
max	<p>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p>										
confidence	<p>specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i>, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.probability</a></p>										
<b>Example</b>	<pre>The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from &lt;del rend="overstrike"&gt;   &lt;gap reason="illegible"     extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/&gt; &lt;/del&gt; Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.</pre>										
<b>Example</b>	<pre>Americares has been supporting the health sector in Eastern Europe since 1986, and since 1992 has provided &lt;measure atLeast="120000000" unit="USD" commodity="currency"&gt;more than \$120m&lt;/measure&gt; in aid to Ukrainians.</pre>										

### Appendix A.3.29. att.sortable

<b>att.sortable</b> provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [10.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]			
<b>Module</b>	tei		
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">item</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">person</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">term</a>		
<b>Attributes</b>	<table> <tr> <td>sortKey</td><td> <p>supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> </td></tr> </table>	sortKey	<p>supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p>
sortKey	<p>supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p>		

	<p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.word</u></p> <pre>David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen &lt;index indexName="NAMES"&gt; &lt;term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen"&gt;Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya&lt;/term&gt; &lt;/index&gt; b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent</p> <p>Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for <i>4-H</i> will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and <i>McCoy</i> may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while <i>A1</i>, <i>A4</i>, and <i>A5</i> may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.</p>
--	---

### Appendix A.3.30. *att.typed*

<p><b>att.typed</b> provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 18.1.1. Words and Above 3.6.1. Referring Strings 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 14.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 17.1.1. Pointers and Links 17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 13.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 23.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">affiliation</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">desc</a> <a href="#">event</a> <a href="#">eventName</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">list</a> <a href="#">listEvent</a> <a href="#">listOrg</a> <a href="#">listPerson</a> <a href="#">listPlace</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">nameLink</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">org</a> <a href="#">place</a> <a href="#">placeName</a> <a href="#">ptr</a> <a href="#">roleName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">term</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>type</b> characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <pre>&lt;div type="verse"&gt; &lt;head&gt;Night in Tarras&lt;/head&gt; &lt;lg type="stanza"&gt; &lt;l&gt;At evening tramping on the hot white road&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;...&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/lg&gt; &lt;lg type="stanza"&gt; &lt;l&gt;A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;...&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/lg&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>type</i> attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of <b>att.typed</b>, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.</p>
	<p><b>subtype</b> (subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>subtype</i> attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its <i>type</i> attribute.</p>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="@type"&gt;The &lt;sch:name/&gt; element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</pre>

<b>Note</b>	When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .
-------------	--

### Appendix A.3.31. att.written

<b>att.written</b> provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>text</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>hand</b> points to a &lt;handNote&gt; element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p>

## Appendix A.4. Macros

### Appendix A.4.1. macro.limitedContent

<b>macro.limitedContent</b> (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>desc</u>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_macro.limitedContent =   ( text   tei_model.limitedPhrase   tei_model.inter )*</pre>

### Appendix A.4.2. macro.paraContent

<b>macro.paraContent</b> (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>p</u> <u>title</u>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.paraPart"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_macro.paraContent = ( text   tei_model.paraPart )*</pre>

### Appendix A.4.3. macro.phraseSeq

<b>macro.phraseSeq</b> (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>affiliation</u> <u>country</u> <u>editor</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>name</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> <u>term</u>
<b>Content model</b>	<content>

	<pre> &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;textNode/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.attributable"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> tei_macro.phraseSeq = (   text     tei_model.gLike     tei_model.attributable     tei_model.phrase     tei_model.global )* </pre>

#### Appendix A.4.4. *macro.phraseSeq.limited*

**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	resp
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text   tei_model.limitedPhrase   tei_model.global ) * </pre>

#### Appendix A.4.5. *macro.specialPara*

**macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	item licence note
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divPart"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> tei_macro.specialPara = (   text     tei_model.gLike     tei_model.phrase     tei_model.inter     tei_model.divPart     tei_model.global )* </pre>

### Appendix A.5. Datatypes

#### Appendix A.5.1. *teidata.certainty*

**teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

<b>Module</b>	tei
---------------	-----



Used by	
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="duration"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;time dur="PT45M"&gt;forty-five minutes&lt;/time&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;date dur="P1DT12H"&gt;a day and a half&lt;/date&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;date dur="P7D"&gt;a week&lt;/date&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;time dur="PT0.02S"&gt;20 ms&lt;/time&gt;</pre>
Note	<p>A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.</p> <p>For complete details, see the W3C specification.</p>

### Appendix A.5.5. *teidata.enumerated*

<b>teidata.enumerated</b> defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.	
Module	tei
Used by	<p><u>teidata.gender</u> <u>teidata.sex</u>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>affiliation</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>availability</u>/<u>@status</u></li> <li>• <u>desc</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>idno</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>list</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>org</u>/<u>@role</u></li> <li>• <u>person</u>/<u>@role</u></li> <li>• <u>person</u>/<u>@age</u></li> <li>• <u>title</u>/<u>@type</u></li> <li>• <u>title</u>/<u>@level</u></li> </ul>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef key="teidata.word"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.enumerated = teidata.word</pre>
Note	<p>Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.</p> <p>Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <code>&lt;valList&gt;</code> element.</p>

### Appendix A.5.6. *teidata.gender*

<b>teidata.gender</b> defines the range of attribute values used to represent the gender of a person, persona, or character.	
Module	tei
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>person</u>/<u>@gender</u></li> </ul>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/&gt; </pre>

	<code>&lt;/content&gt;</code>
<b>Declaration</b>	<code>tei_teidata.gender = teidata.enumerated</code>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p> <p>Values for this datatype should not be used to encode morphological gender (cf. <code>&lt;gen&gt;</code>, <i>msd</i> as defined in <i>att.linguistic</i>, and 10.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms).</p>

### Appendix A.5.7. *teidata.language*

<b>teidata.language</b> defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="language"/&gt;     &lt;valList&gt;       &lt;valItem ident=""/&gt;     &lt;/valList&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<code>tei_teidata.language = xsd:language   ( "" )</code>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.</p> <p>A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or <i>subtags</i> separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.</p> <p><b>language</b></p> <p>The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <a href="https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry">https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry</a>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.</p> <p><b>script</b></p> <p>The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <a href="https://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html">https://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html</a>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.</p> <p><b>region</b></p> <p>Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <a href="https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/">https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/</a>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <a href="http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm">http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm</a>.</p> <p><b>variant</b></p> <p>An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.</p> <p><b>extension</b></p> <p>An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. There are currently only two extensions in use. Extension T indicates that the content was transformed. For example en-t-it could be used for content in English that was translated from Italian. Extension T is described in the informational RFC 6497. Extension U can be used to embed a variety of locale attributes. It is described in the informational RFC 6067.</p>



<b>private use</b>	<p>An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter <i>x</i> (i.e., starts with <i>x</i> - ) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <code>&lt;language&gt;</code> element must be present in the TEI header.</p> <p>There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been 'grandfathered' from previous specifications.</p> <p>Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with <i>x</i> -, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <code>&lt;language&gt;</code> element in the TEI header.</p> <p>Examples include</p> <p><b>sn</b> Shona</p> <p><b>zh-TW</b> Taiwanese</p> <p><b>zh-Hant-HK</b> Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong</p> <p><b>en-SL</b> English as spoken in Sierra Leone</p> <p><b>pl</b> Polish</p> <p><b>es-MX</b> Spanish as spoken in Mexico</p> <p><b>es-419</b> Spanish as spoken in Latin America</p> <p>The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.</p>
--------------------	--

#### Appendix A.5.8. *teidata.name*

<b>teidata.name</b> defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="Name"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.name = xsd:Name</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name">https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name</a> ): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

#### Appendix A.5.9. *teidata.numeric*

<b>teidata.numeric</b> defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="double"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="token"       restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="decimal"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.numeric =</pre>

	<code>xsd:double   token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+)/\\-?[\\d]+" }   xsd:decimal</code>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.</p> <p>To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.</p> <p>A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.</p>

#### Appendix A.5.10. *teidata.outputMeasurement*

<b>teidata.outputMeasurement</b> defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction="(\\-+)?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex ch rem vw vh vmin vmax)" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.outputMeasurement =   token   {     pattern = "(\\-+)?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex ch rem vw vh vmin vmax)"   }</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;figure&gt; &lt;head&gt;The TEI Logo&lt;/head&gt; &lt;figDesc&gt;Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters &lt;mentioned&gt;TEI&lt;/mentioned&gt; in   between and &lt;mentioned&gt;text encoding initiative&lt;/mentioned&gt; underneath, all on a white   background.&lt;/figDesc&gt; &lt;graphic height="600px" width="600px"   url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/&gt; &lt;/figure&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

#### Appendix A.5.11. *teidata.pattern*

<b>teidata.pattern</b> defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.pattern = token</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>A regular expression, often called a <i>pattern</i>, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings <i>Handel</i>, <i>Händel</i>, and <i>Haendel</i> can be described by the pattern <code>H(ä ae?)ndel</code> (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern <code>H(ä ae?)ndel</code> <i>matches</i> each of the three strings)</p> <p>Wikipedia This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.</p>

#### Appendix A.5.12. *teidata.pointer*

<b>teidata.pointer</b> defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.
--

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef restriction="\S+" name="anyURI"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 <i>Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax</i>. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 <i>Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs) mapping to URIs</i>. For example, <a href="https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%">https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%</a> is encoded as <a href="https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25">https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25</a> while <a href="http://-mr---nx.mirbg4-n###.#####-#####.####/">http://-mr---nx.mirbg4-n###.#####-#####.####/</a> is encoded as <a href="http://ckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/">http://ckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/</a></p>

### Appendix A.5.13. teidata.probCert

**teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef key="teidata.probability"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.probCert = teidata.probability   teidata.certainty</pre>

### Appendix A.5.14. teidata.probability

**teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">teidata.probCert</a>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="double"&gt;     &lt;dataFacet name="minInclusive" value="0"/&gt;     &lt;dataFacet name="maxInclusive" value="1"/&gt;   &lt;/dataRef&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.probability = xsd:double</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing <i>certainly false</i> and 1 representing <i>certainly true</i>.</p>

### Appendix A.5.15. teidata.replacement

**teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.replacement = text</pre>

### Appendix A.5.16. teidata.sex

**teidata.sex** defines the range of attribute values used to identify the sex of an organism.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>person/</u>@sex</li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.sex = teidata.enumerated</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

### Appendix A.5.17. *teidata.temporal.iso*

**teidata.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="date"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYear"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYearMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonthDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="time"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="dateTime"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="token"       restriction=" [0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]+"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.temporal.iso =   xsd:date     xsd:gYear     xsd:gMonth     xsd:gDay     xsd:gYearMonth     xsd:gMonthDay     xsd:time     xsd:dateTime     token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]+" }</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the <code>dateTime</code> representation should be used.</p> <p>For all representations for which ISO 8601:2004 describes both a <i>basic</i> and an <i>extended</i> format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.</p>

### Appendix A.5.18. *teidata.temporal.w3c*

**teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="date"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYear"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYearMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonthDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="time"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="dateTime"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> tei_teidata.temporal.w3c =   xsd:date   xsd:gYear   xsd:gMonth   xsd:gDay   xsd:gYearMonth   xsd:gMonthDay   xsd:time   xsd:dateTime </pre>
<b>Note</b>	If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

### Appendix A.5.19. teidata.text

<b>teidata.text</b> defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="string"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> tei_teidata.text = string </pre>
<b>Note</b>	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

### Appendix A.5.20. teidata.truthValue

<b>teidata.truthValue</b> defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="boolean"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> tei_teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean </pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.</p> <p>This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: <b>teidata.xTruthValue</b>.</p>

### Appendix A.5.21. teidata.version

<b>teidata.version</b> defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>TEI</u>/@version</li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction="[\d]+(\. [\d]+) {0,2}" /&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> tei_teidata.version = token { pattern = " [\d]+(\. [\d]+) {0,2}" } </pre>
<b>Note</b>	The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number ( <a href="https://unicode.org/versions/">https://unicode.org/versions/</a> ). A version number contains digits and full-stop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

### Appendix A.5.22. teidata.versionNumber

<b>teidata.versionNumber</b> defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.	
--	--

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;dataRef name="token" restriction="[\\d]+[a-z]*[\\d]*(\\. [\\d]+[a-z]*[\\d]*){0,3}"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.versionNumber = token { pattern = "[\\d]+[a-z]*[\\d]*(\\. [\\d]+[a-z]*[\\d]*){0,3} " }</pre>

### Appendix A.5.23. *teidata.word*

<b>teidata.word</b> defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	teidata.enumerated
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;dataRef name="token" restriction="^[\\p{C}\\p{Z}]+"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.word = token { pattern = "^[\\p{C}\\p{Z}]+ " }</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

### Appendix A.5.24. *teidata.xTruthValue*

<b>teidata.xTruthValue</b> (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate&gt; &lt;dataRef name="boolean"/&gt; &lt;valList&gt; &lt;valItem ident="unknown"/&gt; &lt;valItem ident="inapplicable"/&gt; &lt;/valList&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean   ( "unknown"   "inapplicable" )</pre>
<b>Note</b>	In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue.

### Appendix A.5.25. *teidata.xpath*

<b>teidata.xpath</b> defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>tei_teidata.xpath = text</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2.. When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.